



## EtherWAN Managed Switch – V1.94.2.1

### User's Guide

#### FastFind Links

[Unpacking and Installation](#)

[Computer Setup](#)

[Setting the initial IP address](#)

## All Rights Reserved

Dissemination or reproduction of this document, or its contents, is not authorized except where expressly permitted. Violators are liable for damages. All rights reserved, for the purposes of patent application or trademark registration.

## Disclaimer of Liability

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. EtherWAN is not liable for any errors or omissions contained herein or for resulting damage in connection with the information provided in this manual.

## Registered Trademarks

The following words and phrases are registered Trademarks of EtherWAN Systems Inc.

EtherOS™

Ethernet to the World™

All other Trademarks are property of their respective owners.

## Warranty

For details on the EtherWAN warranty replacement policy, please visit our web site at:

<https://kb.etherwan.com/index.php?CategoryID=13>

## Products Supported by this Manual:

V1.94.2 EtherWAN Managed Switch

## Contact EtherWAN Systems

Corporate Headquarters

EtherWAN Systems Inc.

4570 E. Eisenhower Circle

Anaheim, CA 92807

Tel: (714) 779 3800

Fax: (714) 779 3806

Email: [support@etherwan.com](mailto:support@etherwan.com)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	<b>iii</b>
<b>Table of Figures</b> .....	<b>xii</b>
<b>Preface</b> .....	<b>xvi</b>
Changes in this Revision .....	xvi
Document Conventions .....	xvii
Safety and Warnings .....	xvii
Typographic Conventions .....	xvii
<b>Unpacking and Installation</b> .....	<b>18</b>
Package Contents .....	18
Unpacking .....	18
Required Equipment and Software .....	19
<b>Computer Setup</b> .....	<b>20</b>
Management Methods and Protocols .....	20
Default IP .....	21
Login Process and Default Credentials .....	21
<b>Setting the initial IP address</b> .....	<b>22</b>
Simple IP Addressing .....	22
<b>CLI Command Usage</b> .....	<b>23</b>
Navigating the CLI Hierarchy .....	23
CLI Keyboard Shortcuts .....	23
CLI Command modes .....	24
General Configuration Mode .....	24
MSTP Configuration Mode .....	24
Interface Configuration Mode .....	25
VLAN Database Configuration Mode .....	25
Saving a Configuration from the CLI .....	25
<b>System Menu</b> .....	<b>26</b>
System Information .....	26
System Name/Password .....	28
System Name/Password using the CLI .....	29
IP Address .....	30

Static IP .....	30
DHCP Client .....	30
Default Gateway .....	30
DNS Server.....	30
IP Address - Configuration using the CLI .....	32
IP Address .....	32
Default Gateway .....	33
Domain Name Server (DNS).....	34
Enable/Disable DHCP Client on a VLAN.....	35
Enable/Disable Static IP on a VLAN.....	35
Management Interface.....	37
HTTPS.....	37
Telnet.....	37
SSH (Secure Shell).....	38
Management Interface Configuration using the CLI .....	39
Enabling/Disabling Telnet .....	39
Enabling/Disabling SSH.....	40
Enabling/Disabling HTTP and/or HTTPS .....	41
Save Configuration Page.....	43
Save Configuration .....	43
Load Configuration.....	43
Backup Configuration.....	43
Restore Default.....	44
Auto Save .....	44
Save Configuration Page using the CLI .....	45
Saving a Configuration.....	45
Restore Default Settings .....	45
Load Configuration from a TFTP Server .....	46
Save Configuration to a TFTP Server .....	46
Auto Save Configuration .....	47
Firmware Upgrade.....	48
Firmware Update using the CLI .....	49
Reboot.....	50
Reboot using the CLI .....	50
Logout .....	50
Logout from the CLI .....	50
User Account Page.....	51
Changing the User Mode .....	51
Creating a New User.....	52
Changing an Existing User Account.....	53
User Privilege Configuration .....	54
User Account Settings using the CLI.....	56
Multi-User Mode.....	56

---

Single User Mode .....	56
Creating a New User.....	57
Permissions .....	58
<b>Diagnostics .....</b>	<b>60</b>
Utilization.....	60
System Log.....	61
System log using CLI command .....	61
Remote Logging .....	62
Remote Logging using CLI commands .....	64
ARP Table .....	65
ARP Table using CLI Commands .....	66
Route Table.....	67
Route Table Using CLI Commands .....	67
Alarm Setting .....	68
<b>Port .....</b>	<b>69</b>
Configuration .....	69
Port Status.....	71
Rate Control .....	72
RMON Statistics .....	73
Per Port VLAN Activities .....	74
Port Security .....	75
Port Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands.....	76
Setting the Port Description .....	76
Enable or Disable a Port .....	76
Setting the Port Speed.....	77
Setting Port Duplex.....	77
Enable or Disable Port FlowControl .....	78
Display Port Status .....	78
Setting a Ports Rate Control .....	78
Display a Ports RMON Statistics.....	79
Display a Ports VLAN Activities.....	79
Setting MAC Port Security .....	79
<b>Switching.....</b>	<b>81</b>
Bridging .....	81
Aging Time.....	82
Threshold Level .....	82
Storm Control Type.....	82
Port Isolation.....	83
Block Multicast.....	83
Loopback Detect.....	85

Loopback Detection (Global).....	85
Loopback Detect Action .....	85
Loopback Detect Recovery Time .....	85
Polling Interval .....	86
Loopback Detection (Per Port) .....	87
Storm Detect.....	88
Enable/Disable Storm Detection .....	88
Static MAC Entry .....	90
Adding a Static MAC Address to a Port.....	90
Removing a Static MAC Address from a Port.....	91
Adding a MAC to the Static-MAC-Entry Discard Table.....	91
Removing a MAC address from the Static-MAC-Entry Discard Table .....	92
Port Mirroring.....	93
Link State Tracking .....	95
Enable/Disable Link State Tracking .....	95
Port Settings .....	95
PoE - System and Port Settings.....	97
PoE System Setting .....	97
PoE Port Setting .....	98
PoE Scheduling .....	100
Switch Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands.....	102
Setting the Aging Time Value.....	102
Enabling Port Isolation .....	102
Enabling Block Multicast .....	103
Setting Storm Control.....	103
Enabling Loopback Detect (Global).....	104
Setting the Loopback Detect Action .....	104
Setting the Loopback Detect Recovery Time .....	104
Setting the Loopback Detect Polling Interval .....	105
Enabling Loopback Detect (Port) .....	105
Configuring Storm-Detect.....	106
Adding a MAC Address for Static-MAC-Entry Forwarding.....	110
Adding a MAC Address for Static-MAC-Entry Discarding.....	110
Configuring Port Mirroring .....	111
Enabling a Link State Tracking Group.....	111
Assigning a Port to a Link State Tracking Group.....	112
Setting PoE Power Budget.....	112
PoE Port Settings.....	113
PoE Scheduling .....	116
<b>Trunking .....</b>	<b>119</b>
Overview .....	119
Static Channel Trunking.....	119

Link Aggregation Control Protocol.....	119
Port Trunking.....	120
LACP Trunking.....	123
Trunking Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands.....	127
Adding an Interface to a Static Trunk.....	127
Adding an Interface to a LACP Trunk.....	127
Setting the LACP Port Priority.....	128
Setting the LACP Timeout.....	128
<b>STP/Ring Page – Overview .....</b>	<b>129</b>
Choosing the Spanning Tree Protocols.....	129
Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).....	129
Rapid Spanning Tree protocol (RSTP).....	129
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP).....	129
<b>STP/Ring Page - Configuring RSTP .....</b>	<b>130</b>
Global Configuration Page.....	130
Enabling the RSTP Protocol.....	130
Additional Global Configuration page settings.....	130
The Root Bridge & Backup Root Bridge.....	132
Setting the MAX Age, Forward Delay and Hello Timer.....	134
RSTP Port Setting Page.....	136
Spanning Tree Port Roles.....	136
Path Cost & Port Priority.....	137
Point to Point Link.....	139
Edge Port.....	139
RSTP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands.....	140
Enabling the Spanning Tree Protocol.....	140
Bridge Priority, Max Age, Forward Delay, and Hello Time.....	140
Modifying the Port Priority and Path Cost.....	141
Manually Setting a Port to be a Shared or Point to Point Link.....	141
Enabling/Disabling a port to be an Edge Port.....	142
<b>STP/Ring Page - Configuring MSTP .....</b>	<b>143</b>
Global Configuration Page.....	143
Enabling the MSTP Protocol.....	143
The CIST Root Bridge & Backup CIST Root Bridge.....	145
Setting Bridge Priority.....	145
Configuring the CST Network Diameter.....	147
MSTP Properties Page.....	148
Configuring an MSTP Region.....	148
Configuring the IST Network Diameter.....	150
MSTP Instance Setting Page.....	151

Setting an MSTP Instance .....	151
Modifying MSTP parameters for load balancing .....	152
MSTP Port Setting page .....	154
Adjusting the blocking port in a MSTP network .....	154
MSTI Instance Port Membership .....	156
MSTP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands .....	157
Enabling Spanning Tree for MSTP .....	157
Bridge Priority, Max Age, Forward Delay, and Hello Time .....	158
IST MAX Hops .....	158
MSTP Regional Configuration Name and the Revision Level .....	159
Creating an MSTI Instance .....	159
Setting MSTI Priority .....	160
Modifying CIST Port Priority and Port Path Cost .....	160
Adding a Port to an MSTI Instance .....	161
<b>STP/Ring Page - Alpha Ring .....</b>	<b>162</b>
Alpha Ring Setting Page .....	162
EtherWAN $\alpha$ -Ring Technology .....	162
Implementing a Simple $\alpha$ -Ring .....	162
Connecting two $\alpha$ -Ring Networks together .....	164
<b>STP/Ring Page – Alpha Chain .....</b>	<b>165</b>
The Alpha Chain Protocol .....	165
General Overview .....	165
Alpha Chain Settings .....	166
Global Settings .....	166
Configuring the Alpha Chain Ports .....	167
Alpha Chain Pass-Through Ports .....	169
Configuring Alpha Chain using CLI commands .....	170
Storm Control .....	170
Configuring Chain Ports .....	170
Configuring Chain Pass-Through Ports .....	171
<b>STP/Ring Page - Advanced Setting .....</b>	<b>172</b>
Advanced Bridge Configuration .....	172
Advanced Per Port Configuration .....	173
Configuring Spanning Tree Advanced Settings using CLI commands .....	174
Enabling BPDU Guard Globally .....	174
Enabling BPDU Guard on a Port .....	174
Enabling BPDU Guard Error Disable-timeout .....	175
<b>VLAN .....</b>	<b>176</b>
Port Based VLAN vs. Tagged Based VLAN .....	176

Configuring VLANs in Port Based VLAN Mode .....	176
Enabling Port Based VLAN .....	176
Port Based VLAN Configuration Examples .....	177
Port Based VLAN Configuration Examples using CLI Commands .....	179
VLAN Configuration in 802.1Q Tag Based VLAN Mode.....	180
General Overview .....	180
Enabling 802.1Q Tagged Based VLAN .....	181
Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Database.....	182
802.1Q Tag Based VLAN Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands .....	183
Configuring a 802.1Q VLAN.....	183
Configuring an IP Address for a Management VLAN .....	183
Removing an IP Address from a Management VLAN.....	184
Configuring an Access Port.....	184
Configuring a Trunk Port.....	185
Add an IP to the Management VLAN .....	186
Configuring the Port Type and the PVID setting.....	187
Configuring the VLAN Egress (outgoing) Member Ports .....	188
<b>QoS .....</b>	<b>190</b>
Global Configuration Page.....	191
Web GUI Interface .....	191
QoS Global Configuration using the CLI Interface .....	193
Enable/Disable QoS Trust.....	194
Configuring the Egress Expedite Queue .....	194
802.1p Priority Page .....	196
Web GUI Interface .....	196
802.1p Priority Submenu – CLI Interface .....	197
DSCP Page – HTTP Interface .....	198
DSCP Submenu – CLI Interface .....	199
QoS Interface Commands – CLI Interface .....	200
<b>ACL (Access Control List) .....</b>	<b>201</b>
General Overview .....	201
Configuring ACL .....	202
ACL Policy Map .....	204
IP Access List .....	205
IP Access List (Extended) .....	206
Mac Access List .....	208
Layer 4.....	210
Bandwidth Limiting.....	211
Applying a Policy Map to a Port .....	213
Modifying/Adding an Existing Policy Map .....	214
Adding a New ACL Class to an Existing Policy Map .....	214

Adding an Existing ACL Class to an Existing Policy Map .....	215
Removing an ACL Class .....	217
ACL Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands .....	221
Enabling QoS.....	221
Creating a Standard IP Access List.....	222
Creating an Extended IP Access List .....	222
Creating a MAC Access List .....	223
Creating an ACL Class Map with Layer 4 Access List.....	224
Creating a ACL Class Map with an IP or MAC Access List .....	225
Creating an ACL Policy Map .....	226
Applying an Existing ACL Policy to a Port.....	227
Deleting an ACL Class.....	227
Deleting an ACL Policy .....	228
<b>SNMP .....</b>	<b>229</b>
SNMP General Settings.....	229
Configuring SNMP v1 & v2 Community Groups.....	232
Configuring SNMP v3 Users .....	233
Adding SNMP v3 Users to the switch.....	233
Deleting SNMP v3 Users from the switch.....	236
SNMP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands .....	237
Enabling SNMP and configuring general settings.....	237
Configuring SNMP Traps .....	238
Configuring SNMP v1 & v2 Community Groups .....	240
Adding SNMP v3 Users .....	240
<b>IEEE 802.1X.....</b>	<b>241</b>
Configuring 802.1X from the GUI system.....	241
Enabling Radius.....	241
Adding a Radius Server .....	242
Enabling 802.1X on a Port .....	244
<b>LLDP .....</b>	<b>246</b>
LLDP General Settings .....	247
Enable/Disable LLDP.....	247
Holdtime Multiplier .....	247
Global TLV Setting.....	248
LLDP Ports Settings .....	250
Enabling LLDP transmission for a specific Port.....	250
Enabling LLDP Reception for a specific Port.....	250
Enabling Notifications .....	250
LLDP Neighbors .....	252
LLDP Statistics .....	253

LLDP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands .....	254
Enable/Disable LLDP .....	254
LLDP Holdtime Multiplier.....	255
LLDP Transmit Interval .....	255
Enable/Disable Global LLDP TLVs .....	256
Enabling LLDP Transmit on a Port.....	257
Enabling LLDP Receive on a Port.....	257
Enabling LLDP Notify.....	258
Enabling Transmission of the Management IP .....	258
Enabling Specific TLV's on a Port .....	259
<b>Other Protocols.....</b>	<b>260</b>
GVRP .....	260
General Overview .....	261
Enabling the GVRP Protocol at the Global Level .....	262
Enabling the GVRP Protocol at the Port Level .....	263
GVRP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands .....	264
IGMP Snooping .....	267
General Overview .....	267
Enabling the IGMP Snooping Modes .....	268
Configuring IGMP Snooping General properties .....	269
Configuring IGMP Passive Mode Specific properties .....	270
Configuring IGMP Querier Mode Specific properties.....	271
Configuring IGMP Unknown Multicast Forwarding .....	272
Monitoring Registered Multicast Groups .....	276
IGMP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands .....	277
Network Time Protocol .....	285
Enabling NTP.....	285
Setting the NTP Server IP Address.....	285
Setting the Timezone.....	285
Setting the Polling Period.....	285
Manually Syncing Time.....	286
Daylight Savings Time - Weekday Mode.....	286
Daylight Savings Time – Date Mode .....	287
Network Time Protocol Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands.....	289
GMRP.....	292
General Overview .....	292
GMRP Normal mode.....	292
GMRP Fixed mode .....	292
GMRP Forbidden mode .....	293
GMRP Forward All mode .....	293
GMRP Disabled mode .....	293
Enabling the GMRP Feature Globally on the Switch .....	293

Configuring the GMRP Feature Per Port.....	294
GMRP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands .....	297
DHCP Server.....	299
General Overview .....	299
Configuring the DHCP Server .....	299
DHCP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands .....	302

## TABLE OF FIGURES

Figure 1: Login screen.....	21
Figure 2: Assigning an IP address.....	22
Figure 3: System Information .....	27
Figure 4: System Name/Password .....	28
Figure 5: IP Address.....	31
Figure 6: Management Interface.....	38
Figure 7: Save Configuration Page.....	44
Figure 8: Firmware Upgrade Page .....	49
Figure 9: User Mode.....	51
Figure 10: Creating Users .....	52
Figure 11: Selecting an Existing User Account.....	53
Figure 12: Deleting a User Account.....	53
Figure 13: User Privilege Page.....	55
Figure 14: Utilization Page .....	60
Figure 15: System Log .....	61
Figure 16: Remote Logging Page.....	63
Figure 17: ARP Table.....	65
Figure 18: Route Table.....	67
Figure 19: Alarm Trigger .....	68
Figure 20: Trigger Enable.....	68
Figure 21: Port Configuration .....	70
Figure 22: Port Status .....	71
Figure 23: Rate Control .....	72
Figure 24: RMON Page.....	73
Figure 25: Port VLAN Activities .....	74
Figure 26: Port Security.....	75
Figure 27: Bridging.....	84
Figure 28: Loopback Detection.....	86
Figure 29: Loopback Detection (port) .....	87
Figure 30: Storm Detect – Global .....	88

---

Figure 31: Storm Detect – Per Port .....	89
Figure 32: MAC Static Entry .....	90
Figure 33: Removing a Static MAC .....	91
Figure 34: Adding a MAC – Static-MAC-Entry Table .....	91
Figure 35: Deleting a MAC – Static-MAC-Entry Table .....	92
Figure 36: Port Mirroring .....	94
Figure 37: Disabling Port Mirroring .....	94
Figure 38: Link State Tracking .....	95
Figure 39: Link State Tracking – Port Settings .....	96
Figure 40: PoE System Setting .....	97
Figure 41: PoE Port Setting .....	99
Figure 42: Selecting a Port .....	100
Figure 43: PoE Power Scheduling .....	101
Figure 44: Port Trunking – Version 1 .....	121
Figure 45: Port Trunking – Version 2 .....	122
Figure 46: LACP Trunking Version 1 .....	124
Figure 47: LACP Trunking – Version 2 .....	126
Figure 48: STP/Ring Global Configuration .....	131
Figure 49: Bridge ID .....	132
Figure 50: Bridge ID Display .....	133
Figure 51: Max Age, Hello Timer & Forward Delay .....	135
Figure 52: Spanning Tree Port Roles .....	136
Figure 53: Port ID .....	137
Figure 54: Port Priority and Path Cost .....	138
Figure 55: Enabling MSTP .....	144
Figure 56: Bridge ID .....	145
Figure 57: Bridge ID Display .....	146
Figure 58: Max Age, Hello Timer & Forward Delay .....	148
Figure 59: MSTP Region and Revision Level .....	149
Figure 60: MSTP Properties – Max Hops .....	150
Figure 61: VLAN Instance Configuration .....	152
Figure 62: VLAN Instance ID .....	152
Figure 63: Setting the MSTI Regional Root Bridge .....	153
Figure 64: Port Cost & Priority .....	155
Figure 65: Port Instance Configuration .....	156
Figure 66: Port Instance - Adding Ports .....	157
Figure 67: $\alpha$ -Ring Settings .....	163
Figure 68: Ring Coupling .....	164
Figure 69: Alpha Chain Setting .....	167
Figure 70: Chain Ports – Master and Slave on one Switch .....	167
Figure 71: Chain Ports – Master Chain Port .....	168
Figure 72: Advanced Bridge Configuration .....	172
Figure 73: Advanced Per Port Configuration .....	173

Figure 74: Port Based VLAN .....	176
Figure 75: Port Based VLAN – Example 1 .....	177
Figure 76: Port Based VLAN – Example 2.....	178
Figure 77: Tag-based VLAN.....	181
Figure 78: Add VLAN .....	182
Figure 79: Add VLAN Page .....	182
Figure 80: Management VLAN IP Address.....	186
Figure 81: VLAN Port Setting .....	187
Figure 82: VLAN Links .....	188
Figure 83: VLAN Ports .....	189
Figure 84: Tag or Untag ports .....	189
Figure 85: Global Configuration.....	191
Figure 86: 802.1p Priority .....	196
Figure 87: DSCP .....	198
Figure 88: Enabling QoS .....	203
Figure 89: Policy Map.....	204
Figure 90: IP Access List.....	205
Figure 91: Access List Extended .....	206
Figure 92: MAC Access list .....	208
Figure 93: Layer 4.....	210
Figure 94: IP Access List Name .....	211
Figure 95: Police Rate.....	212
Figure 96: Policy Map Name .....	212
Figure 97: Applying a Policy Map to a Port.....	213
Figure 98: Modifying a Policy Map.....	214
Figure 99: Adding a New ACL Class to an Existing Policy Map.....	215
Figure 100: Policy Map Setting – Class Name.....	216
Figure 101: Policy Map Setting.....	216
Figure 102: Removing an ACL Class .....	217
Figure 103: Verifying ACL Class Removal.....	218
Figure 104: Removing a Policy Map.....	219
Figure 105: Policy Map 2.....	220
Figure 106: Policy Map 3.....	221
Figure 107: SNMP General Settings .....	231
Figure 108: Community Name V1/V2c .....	232
Figure 109: Add User .....	233
Figure 110: SNMP v3 Settings .....	234
Figure 111: User name & Access Mode .....	234
Figure 112: Auth Password .....	235
Figure 113: Privacy PassPhrase .....	235
Figure 114: Delete User .....	236
Figure 115: Select User.....	236
Figure 116: Enable Radius.....	242

---

Figure 117: Radius Setup.....	243
Figure 118: Resulting Radius Server Setup.....	244
Figure 119: Enabling 802.1X on a Port.....	245
Figure 120: LLDP Global Settings .....	249
Figure 121: LLDP Ports Settings .....	251
Figure 122: LLDP Neighbors .....	252
Figure 123: LLDP Statistics .....	253
Figure 124: GVRP .....	260
Figure 125: GVRP Configuration Distribution Switch .....	262
Figure 126: GVRP Configuration Access Switch .....	262
Figure 127: GVRP Per Port Settings .....	263
Figure 128: IGMP Mode .....	268
Figure 129: IGMP General Properties .....	269
Figure 130: IGMP Passive Mode.....	270
Figure 131: Querier Mode Properties .....	271
Figure 132: Disabled Mode Forwarding Port .....	272
Figure 133: PassiveForwardMode.....	273
Figure 134: ForceForwardMode .....	274
Figure 135: IGMP Querier Mode Forwarding.....	275
Figure 136: Current Multicast Groups.....	276
Figure 137: NTP Settings .....	286
Figure 138: Daylight Savings – Weekday Mode .....	287
Figure 139: Daylight Savings – Date Mode .....	288
Figure 140: GMRP Global Setting .....	294
Figure 141: DHCP Server .....	300
Figure 142: DHCP Bindings .....	301
Figure 143: DHCP Binding Table .....	301

# PREFACE

## Audience

This guide is designed for the person who installs, configures, deploys, and maintains the Ethernet network. This document assumes the reader has moderate hardware, computer, and Internet skills.

## Document Revision Level

This section provides a history of the revision changes to this document.

Revision	Document Version	Date	Description
C	Version 1	8/21/2015	Updated for Firmware version 1.94.2.1

## Changes in this Revision





Updated product image

## Document Conventions

This guide uses the following conventions to draw your attention to certain information.

## Safety and Warnings

This guide uses the following symbols to draw your attention to certain information.

Symbol	Meaning	Description
	Note	Notes emphasize or supplement important points of the main text.
	Tip	Tips provide helpful information, guidelines, or suggestions for performing tasks more effectively.
	Warning	Warnings indicate that failure to take a specified action could result in damage to the device, or could result in serious bodily injury.
	Electric Shock Hazard	This symbol warns users of electric shock hazard. Failure to take appropriate precautions such as not opening or touching hazardous areas of the equipment could result in injury or death.

## Typographic Conventions

This guide also uses the following typographic conventions.

Convention	Description
<b>Bold</b>	Indicates text on a window, other than the window title, including menus, menu options, buttons, fields, and labels.
<i>Italic</i>	Indicates a variable, which is a placeholder for actual text provided by the user or system. Angled brackets (< >) are also used to indicate variables.
screen/code	Indicates text that is displayed on screen or entered by the user.
< > angled brackets	Indicates a variable, which is a placeholder for actual text provided by the user or system. Italic font is also used to indicate variables.
[ ] square brackets	Indicates optional values.
{ } braces	Indicates required or expected values.
vertical bar	Indicates that you have a choice between two or more options or arguments.

# UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION

This chapter describes how to unpack and install the EtherWAN Managed Switch

The topics covered in this chapter are:

- ❑ Package Contents (Page [18](#))
- ❑ Unpacking (Page [18](#))
- ❑ Required Equipment and Software (Page [19](#))
- ❑ Computer Setup (Page [20](#))
- ❑ Management Methods and Protocols (Page [20](#))
- ❑ Default IP (Page [21](#))
- ❑ Login Process and Default Credentials (Page [21](#))
- ❑ Setting the initial IP address (Page [22](#))

## Package Contents

When you unpack the product package, you will find the items listed below. Please inspect the contents, and report any apparent damage or missing items immediately to your authorized reseller.

- This Managed Switch
- Product CD
- Quick Installation Guide
- External power adapter/Cable (depending on model)

## Unpacking

Follow these steps to unpack the EtherWAN Managed Switch and prepare it for operation:

1. Open the shipping container and carefully remove the contents.
2. Return all packing materials to the shipping container and save it.
3. Confirm that all items listed in the "Package Contents" section are included in the shipment. Check each item for damage. If any item is damaged or missing, notify your authorized EtherWAN representative.

## Required Equipment and Software

The following hardware and software are needed in order to manage the switch from the web interface:

- **Computer with an Ethernet Interface (RJ-45)**

Managing the switch requires a personal computer (PC) or notebook computer equipped with a 10/100base-TX Ethernet interface and a physical RJ-45 connection. The preferred operating system for the computer is Microsoft Windows XP/Vista/7. It is possible to use Apple OSX or Linux systems as well, but, for the sake of brevity, all web configurations in this manual will be shown using Windows 7 as the underlying operating system.

- **Cat 5+ Ethernet Cables**

An Ethernet cable of at least Category 5 rating is required to connect your computer to the switch. The cable can be configured as “straight-through” or crossover.

- **TFTP Server Software**

Trivial file transfer protocol (TFTP) server software is needed to update the switch firmware and to upload/download configuration files to the switch. Users not performing these tasks do not need TFTP software installed. Several good TFTP servers are available for free online. The server that will be used in this manual is TFTP32 by Philippe Jounin.

- **Web Browser Software**

The end user can employ any of the following web browsers during switch configuration: Internet Explorer, Firefox, or Chrome. Internet Explorer is the preferred browser for EtherWAN switch configuration. If there is trouble with other browsers while attempting to program the switch, Internet Explorer should be used.

# COMPUTER SETUP

The end user's management computer may need to be reconfigured prior to connecting to the switch in order to access the switch's web interface through its default IP address (See [Default IP](#)).

## Management Methods and Protocols

There are several methods that can be used to manage the switch. This manual will show the details of configuring the switch using a web browser. Each section will be followed by the CLI (Command Line Interface) commands needed to achieve the same results as described in that section.

The methods available to manage the EtherWAN Managed Switch include:

- **SSH** - Secure Shell CLI that is accessible over TCP/IP networks which and is generally regarded as the most secure method of remotely accessing a device.
- **Telnet** - is like SSH in that it allows a CLI to be established across a TCP/IP network, but it does not encrypt the data stream.
- **HTTP** (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) is the most popular switch management protocol involving the use of a web browser.
- **RS232** – The EtherWAN Managed Switch is equipped with a RS232 serial port that can be used to access the switches CLI. The Serial port is DCE DB9F. A straight through serial cable is used to connect to a typical computer serial port.

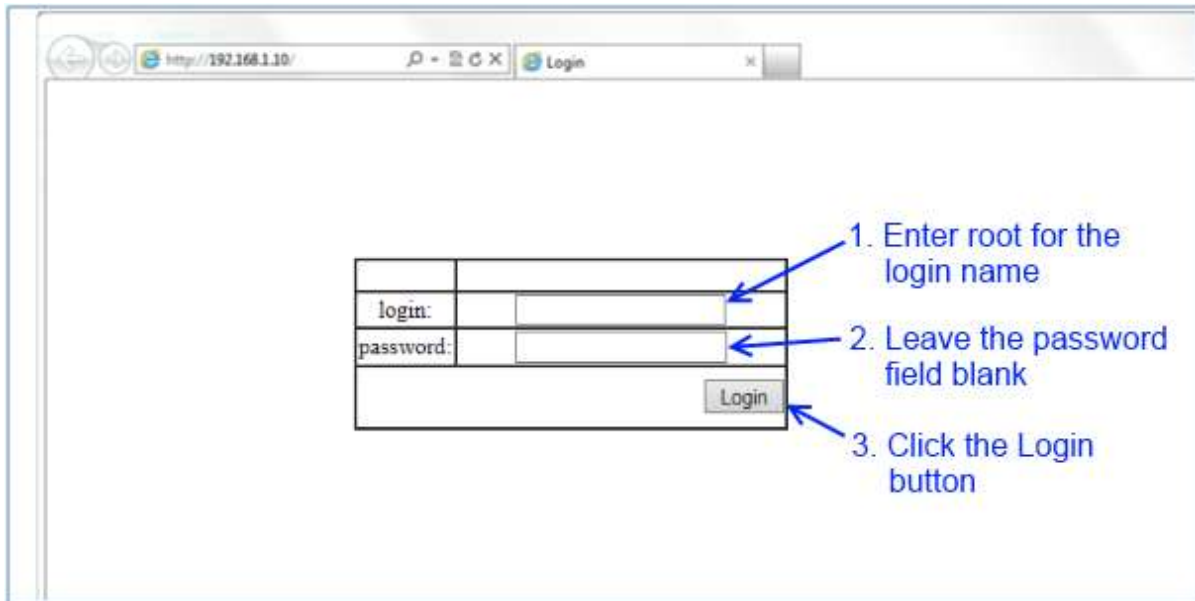
## Default IP

The switch's default IP address is 192.168.1.10. The user will need to modify the management computer so that it is on the same network as the switch. For example, the user could change the IP address of the management computer to 192.168.1.100 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

## Login Process and Default Credentials

Once a compatible IP address has been assigned to the management computer, the user is ready to log in to the switch. To log in, type the URL `http://192.168.1.10/` into the address field of the browser and hit return. The following will appear in the browser window (See [Figure 1](#))

- The Default Login is root (case sensitive)
- There is no password by default
- Enter the login name and click the Login button



**Figure 1: Login screen**

# SETTING THE INITIAL IP ADDRESS

Once logged in the user can now configure the switch per the network requirements. The two major addressing options are:

- Simple IP addressing
- Multiple VLAN addressing (See [Add an IP to the Management VLAN](#) on page [186](#)).

## Simple IP Addressing

A new IP address can now be assigned to the switch. From the System Information screen, go to the left hand navigation menu.

1. Click on the + next to **System**
2. Click on **IP address**
3. Enter the desired IP address and subnet mask in the **IP Address/Subnet Mask** fields associated with VLAN 1
4. Click the **Apply & Save** button (See [Figure 2](#))

The screenshot shows the EtherWAN web interface. On the left is a navigation menu with 'System' expanded and 'IP Address' selected. The main content area is titled 'Static IP:' and contains a table for configuring IP addresses for different VLANs. The table has columns for 'VLAN ID', 'IP Address', and 'IP Subnet Mask'. The first row shows VLAN 1 with IP 10.58.7.78 and subnet mask 255.255.255.0. Below the table is a 'Default Gateway' dropdown set to 'Disable' and an 'Apply & Save' button. Below that is a 'DHCP Client' section with a 'DHCP Client' dropdown set to 'Disable' and a 'Submit' button. At the bottom, there is a 'DNS Server' dropdown set to 'Disable' and another 'Submit' button. The MAC Address is displayed as 00e0.b323.0150. Blue arrows and numbers 1-4 point to the navigation menu, the 'IP Address' link, the IP and subnet mask fields, and the 'Apply & Save' button respectively.

VLAN ID	IP Address	IP Subnet Mask
1	10.58.7.78	255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: Disable

Apply & Save

DHCP Client: Disable

VLAN ID	IP Address	IP Subnet Mask
DHCP Disable		

Submit

DNS Server: Disable

Submit

MAC Address: 00e0.b323.0150

Figure 2: Assigning an IP address

# CLI COMMAND USAGE

This chapter describes accessing the EtherWAN Managed Switch by using Telnet, SSH, or serial ports to configure the switch, navigating the Command Line Interface (CLI), typing keyboard shortcuts, and moving between the levels. This chapter assumes the user has a working understanding of Telnet, SSH and Terminal emulation applications.



**Note:** For a serial port connection use a standard DB9F to DB9M Modem Cable. The default Serial port parameters are 115200, 8 None 1, No Flow Control.

## Navigating the CLI Hierarchy

The CLI is organized into a hierarchy of levels. Each level has a group of commands for a specific purpose. For example, to configure a setting for the VLAN server, one would navigate to the VLAN level, which is under the config level.

## CLI Keyboard Shortcuts

- Ctrl + a: place cursor at the beginning of a line
- Ctrl + b: backspace one character
- Ctrl + d: delete one character
- Ctrl + e: place cursor at the end of the line
- Ctrl + f: move cursor forward one character
- Ctrl + k: delete from the current position to the end of the line
- Ctrl + l: redraw the command line
- Ctrl + n: display the next line in the history
- Ctrl + p: display the previous line in the history
- Ctrl + u: delete entire line and place cursor at start of prompt
- Ctrl + w: delete one word back

## CLI Command modes

Throughout this manual, each section that has CLI commands relevant to that section requires that the CLI be in a specific configuration mode. This section shows the main CLI commands to needed to enter a specific mode.

### General Configuration Mode

To set the EtherWAN Managed Switch to General configuration mode, run the following commands from the CLI:

1. enable
2. configure terminal

Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#
```

### MSTP Configuration Mode

To set the EtherWAN Managed Switch to General MSTP configuration mode, run the following commands from the CLI:

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. spanning-tree mst configuration

Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#spanning-tree mst configuration
switch_a(config-mst)#
```

## Interface Configuration Mode

Interface mode on the EtherWAN Managed Switch is used to configure the Ethernet ports and VLAN information. Valid interfaces are:

- **fe<port #>** - 100mb ports use fe followed by the port number. Example: **fe1**
- **ge<port #>** - Gigabit ports use ge followed by the port number. Example: **ge1**
- **vlan1.<vlan#>** - VLAN's use vlan. Followed by the VLAN ID. Example: **vlan1.10**

Example 1 configures 100mb port 1

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)
```

Example 2 configures VLAN ID 9

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.9
switch_a(config-if)
```

## VLAN Database Configuration Mode

VLAN Database Configuration Mode on the EtherWAN Managed Switch is used to configure the VLAN settings.

Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#vlan database
switch_a(config-vlan)#
```

## Saving a Configuration from the CLI

Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#>
```

# SYSTEM MENU

## System Information

The System information link on the Left menu of the Web Configuration page takes you to a page that shows the following (see [Figure 3](#)):

- **System Name**
  - The System name is typically used by network administrators. If SNMP is enabled on the switch, the system name can be found using MIB II (RFC1213) in the sysName property.
- **Firmware Version**
  - If SNMP is enabled on the switch, the Firmware version can be found using MIB II in the sysDesc property
- **System Time**
  - System time can be change using NTP
- **MAC Address**
  - The hardware (MAC) address of the Management interface
- **Default Gateway**
  - The IP address of your networks Gateway (Typically a Router on your network)
- **DNS Server**
  - The Dynamic Name Server (DNS) for your network
- **VLAN ID**
  - One or more listings depending on the number o VLANs defined on the switch
  - Lists VLAN ID, IP address, and subnet mask of the VLAN Interface(s)
- **Current User Information**
  - Lists the current the currently logged in user and their user privileges

The screenshot displays the EtherWAN Management Switch web interface. The top header features the EtherWAN logo and a row of 21 port indicators. The left sidebar shows a navigation tree under 'Management Switch' with 'System' expanded and 'System Information' selected. The main content area contains two tables:

System Information	
System Name	switch_a
Firmware Version	1.94.2 10/16/14 15:02:07
System Time	Fri Oct 31 23:29:54 UCT 2014
MAC Address	00e0.b333.07bc
Default Gateway	None
DNS Server	None

VLAN ID	IP Address	IP Subnet Mask
1	192.168.2.50	255.255.255.0

Current User Information	
Current Username	root
Current User privilege	Admin

**Figure 3: System Information**

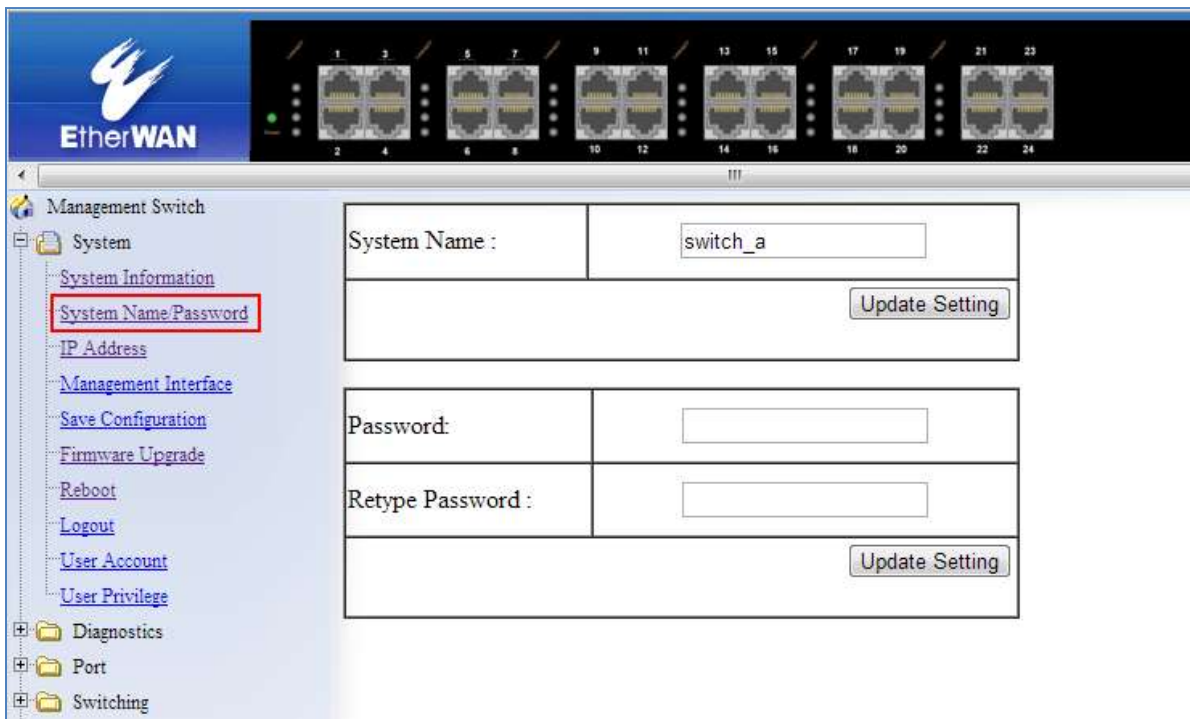
## System Name/Password

The System name is typically used by network administrators to make it easier to document a networks infrastructure and locate equipment on large networks. If SNMP is enabled on the switch, the system name can be found using MIB II (RFC1213) in the sysName property. To change the system name:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**.
2. Click on **System Name/Password** (see [Figure 4](#)).
3. Use your mouse to place the cursor in the **System Name** text box.
4. Replace the existing name with the name you want to assign to the switch.
5. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

By default there is no password assigned to the switch. To add or change a password:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**.
2. Click on **System Name/Password** (see [Figure 4](#)).
3. Use your mouse to place the cursor in the **Password** text box.
4. Enter the new password.
5. Retype the password in the **Retype Password** text box.
6. Click on the **Update Setting** button below the **Retype Password** text box.



The screenshot displays the configuration page for a Management Switch. The top header features the EtherWAN logo and a row of 24 port status indicators. The left sidebar shows a tree view with 'System Name/Password' selected and highlighted with a red box. The main content area contains two form sections. The first section is for the System Name, with a text box containing 'switch\_a' and an 'Update Setting' button. The second section is for the Password, with two text boxes for 'Password' and 'Retype Password', and an 'Update Setting' button below them.

**Figure 4: System Name/Password**

## System Name/Password using the CLI

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

### System Name

To set the system name on a switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**hostname <name>**

**no hostname**

Usage Example 1: Setting a Hostname

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#hostname switch_a
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Removing a Hostname

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no hostname
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

### Password

To enable a password on a switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**enable password <password>**

Usage Example

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#enable password mypassword
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# IP Address

To navigate to the **IP Address** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**
2. Click on **IP Address** (see [Figure 5](#))

There are 4 settings on this page:

**Static IP** (see [Simple IP Addressing](#))

## DHCP Client

Use this to enable or disable DHCP on a VLAN.

To enable the DHCP Client:

1. Use the drop down box to enable the DHCP client on a particular VLAN
2. Click the **Submit** Button

## Default Gateway

If DHCP is enabled, the gateway setting is controlled by the DHCP server. The setting will be grayed out and the gateway supplied by the DHCP server will be displayed. The default gateway setting can be used when using a Static IP address.

To enable the default gateway:

1. Use the dropdown box to enable the default gateway.
2. Type in the default gateway in the **Default Gateway** text box.
3. Click on the **Apply & Save** button.

## DNS Server

If DHCP is enabled, the DNS Server setting is controlled by the DHCP server. The setting will be grayed out and the DNS Server supplied by the DHCP server will be displayed. The DNS Server setting can be used when using a Static IP address. To enable the DNS Server:

1. Use the dropdown box to enable the DNS Server.
2. Type in the default gateway in the **Default Gateway** text box.
3. Click on the **Submit** button.



Note: After making changes to settings in the IP address section, the configuration needs to be saved using the **System/Save configuration** page (See [Save Configuration](#))

The screenshot displays the configuration page for the IP Address of a Managed Switch. The left sidebar shows a navigation tree with 'IP Address' highlighted. The main content area is divided into several sections:

- Static IP:** A table with columns for VLAN ID, IP Address, and IP Subnet Mask. The first row shows VLAN ID 1, IP Address 10.58.7.78, and IP Subnet Mask 255.255.255.0. Below the table is a 'Default Gateway' section with a dropdown set to 'Enable' and a text field containing '10.58.7.1'. An 'Apply & Save' button is located at the bottom right of this section.
- DHCP Client:** A section with a 'DHCP Client' dropdown set to 'Disable'. Below it is a table with columns for VLAN ID, IP Address, and IP Subnet Mask. The first row is labeled 'DHCP Disable'. A 'Submit' button is at the bottom right.
- DNS Server:** A section with a 'DNS Server' dropdown set to 'Enable' and a text field containing '8.8.8.8'. A 'Submit' button is at the bottom right.
- MAC Address:** A section with a text field containing '00e0.b323.0150'.

**Figure 5: IP Address**

# IP Address - Configuration using the CLI

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

## IP Address

To set the IP address, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip address <A.B.C.D/M>** (IP Address/Mask e.g. 10.0.0.1/8)

**no ip address**



**Note:** The Subnet Mask is defined as a **Network Prefix** instead of the common **dotted decimal** (ex. 255.255.255.0).

The most commonly used Network Prefixes are:

- **/8** – Known as Class A. Also known in dotted decimal as 255.0.0.0
- **/16**– Known as Class B. Also known in dotted decimal as 255.255.0.0
- **/24**– Known as Class C. Also known in dotted decimal as 255.255.255.0

Usage Example 1: Assigning an IP address

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip address 192.168.1.1/24
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Removing an IP address

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no ip address
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

## Default Gateway

To set the Default Gateway, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip default-gateway <A.B.C.D>**

**no ip default gateway**

Usage Example 1: Setting the Gateway

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip default-gateway 192.168.1.254
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Removing the Gateway

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no ip default-gateway
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

## Domain Name Server (DNS)

To set the DNS, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip dns <A.B.C.D>**

**no ip dns**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip dns 192.168.1.253
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Remove a DNS IP Address

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no ip dns
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

## Enable/Disable DHCP Client on a VLAN

To enable the DHCP client on a VLAN, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**get ip dhcp enable**  
**no get ip dhcp enable**

Usage Example – Enable DHCP Client on VLAN2:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.2
switch_a(config-if)#get ip dhcp enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

## Enable/Disable Static IP on a VLAN

To set the IP address, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip address <A.B.C.D>**  
**no ip address <A.B.C.D>**

Usage Example 1 – Enable Static IP on VLAN2:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.2
switch_a(config-if)#ip address 192.168.1.11
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

### Usage Example 2 – Enable DHCP Client on VLAN2:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.2
switch_a(config-if)#no ip address 192.168.1.11
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

# Management Interface

To navigate to the **Management Interface** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**
2. Click on **Management Interface**

The Management Interface configuration page has three settings that allow the user to configure the methods available to manage the EtherWAN Managed Switch.

## HTTPS

HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure) allows the user to determine what method, if any, is used to configure the EtherWAN Managed Switch. The default is unencrypted HTTP (see [Figure 6](#)).

To disable the Web interface:

1. Uncheck **Http** and **Https**.
2. Click on the **Update setting** button.



Warning! Once the Submit button is pressed, the Web console will no longer function. As a safety precaution, the configuration is not saved by default. Rebooting the EtherWAN Managed Switch will restore the Web Console. To save the configuration, connect using the new IP address.

To enable the Web Interface:

1. Check **HTTP**, **HTTPS** or both
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
3. Save the Configuration (see [Save Configuration](#))

## Telnet

Telnet is a network protocol that allows a remote computer to log into the EtherWAN Managed Switch to access its CLI (Command Line Interface). The CLI can be access using Telnet, SSH and the serial port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch. The secure method of accessing the CLI over a network is SSH.

To enable or disable Telnet:

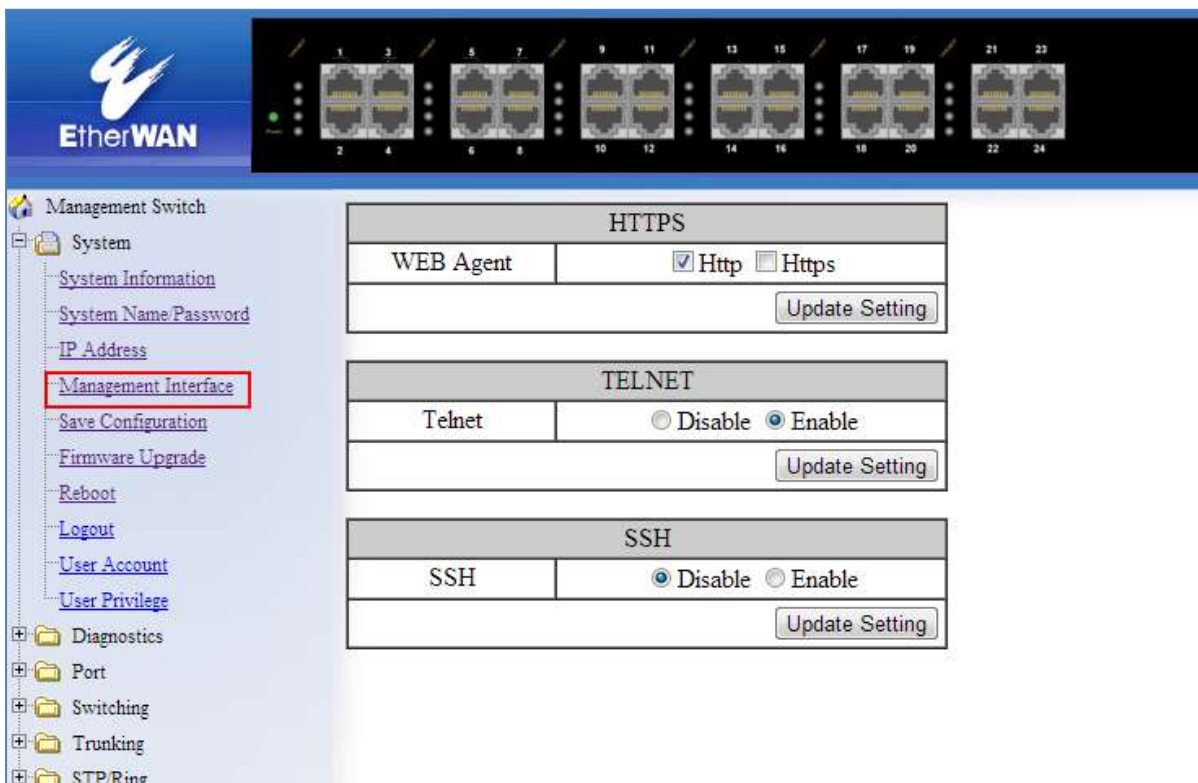
1. Click the **Enable** or **Disable** radio button in the Telnet section on the Management Interface page (see [Figure 6](#) below)
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button
3. Save the Configuration (see [Save Configuration](#))

## SSH (Secure Shell)

Secure Shell or SSH is a network protocol that allows data to be exchanged using a secure channel between two networked devices such as a computer and the EtherWAN Managed Switch. SSH is disabled by default on the V1.94.2 EtherWAN Managed Switch.

To enable or disable SSH:

1. Click the **Enable** or **Disable** radio button in the SSH section on the Management Interface page (see [Figure 6](#))
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button
3. Save the Configuration (see [Save Configuration](#))



**Figure 6: Management Interface**

## Management Interface Configuration using the CLI

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

### Enabling/Disabling Telnet

To enable or disable telnet, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip telnet**

**no ip telnet**

Usage Example 1: Enabling Telnet:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip telnet
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Disabling Telnet:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no ip telnet
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
```



**Note:** If using Telnet to run the CLI Commands that disable telnet you will lose your connection. To Disable Telnet using the CLI, use SSH or the RS232 Console port on the switch.

## Enabling/Disabling SSH

To enable or disable SSH, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip ssh**

**no ip ssh**

Usage Example 1: Enabling SSH:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip ssh
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Disabling SSH:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no ip ssh
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
```



**Note:** If using SSH to run the CLI Commands that disable SSH you will lose your connection. To Disable SSH using the CLI, use Telnet or the RS232 Console port on the switch.

## Enabling/Disabling HTTP and/or HTTPS

To enable or disable telnet, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip http server**

**ip http secure-server**

**no ip http server**

**no ip http secure-server**

Usage Example 1: Enabling HTTP:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip http server
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Disabling HTTP:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no ip http server
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
```

### Usage Example 3: Enabling HTTPS:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip http secure-server
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

### Usage Example 4: Disabling HTTPS:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no ip http secure-server
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
```

## Save Configuration Page

To navigate to the **Save Configuration** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**
2. Click on **Save Configuration**

The Save Configuration page contains the following configuration functions (see [Figure 7](#)):

### Save Configuration

To save the currently running configuration to the flash memory on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click the **Save Configuration** button
2. If the save is successful you will see the message:  
`Building configuration.... [OK]`

### Load Configuration

This function is used to load a previously saved configuration. Backing up and loading a configuration is achieved using a TFTP server.

To load a configuration:

1. Enter the IP address of your TFTP server in the **TFTP Server** text box
2. Enter the name of the configuration file in the **FILE** text box
3. Click on the **Backup** button
4. If the file is successfully loaded the following message will be shown:  
`Success! System reboot is required!`

### Backup Configuration

This function is used to backup the current configuration of the EtherWAN Managed Switch. Backing up the configuration is achieved using a TFTP server such as TFTP32.

To backup a configuration:

1. Enter the IP address of your TFTP server in the **TFTP Server** text box
2. Enter the name of the configuration file in the **FILE** text box
3. Click on the **Backup** button
4. If the backup is successful the following message will be shown:  
`tftp <filename> to ip <ip address> success!!`

## Restore Default

To restore the V1.94.2 EtherWAN Managed Switch to factory defaults:

1. Click on the **Restore Default** button.

## Auto Save

The Auto Save function is used to set the switch to automatically save the configuration to flash. If the saved configuration is the same as the running configuration then a save is not made. The Auto Save interval is used to determine how often the running configuration is checked for changes.

To set the Auto Save function:

1. Click the dropdown box next to **Auto Save**.
2. Set the Auto Save interval (5~65535 sec)



Note: If a Firewall is running on the PC that is running the TFTP server it may need to be temporarily disabled.

The screenshot shows the web interface of an EtherWAN Managed Switch. The top bar features the EtherWAN logo and a row of 24 port status indicators. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with the following items: Management Switch, System, System Information, System Name/Password, IP Address, Management Interface, Save Configuration (highlighted with a red box), Firmware Upgrade, Reboot, Logout, User Account, User Privilege, Diagnostics, Port, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, and V1 AN. The main content area is divided into two sections. The upper section is a table with two columns: Action and File. The lower section is titled 'Auto Save Configuration' and contains two rows: 'Auto Save' with a dropdown menu set to 'Disable', and 'Auto Save Interval (5~65535 sec)' with an empty text input field and a 'Submit' button.

Action	File
Load Config from TFTP Server	TFTP Server: <input type="text"/> FILE: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Load"/>
Backup Config to TFTP Server	TFTP Server: <input type="text"/> FILE: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Backup"/>
<input type="button" value="Save Configuration"/>	
<input type="button" value="Restore Default"/>	

Auto Save Configuration	
Auto Save	<input type="button" value="Disable"/>
Auto Save Interval (5~65535 sec)	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Submit"/>	

Figure 7: Save Configuration Page

## Save Configuration Page using the CLI

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

### Saving a Configuration

To save a running configuration, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:  
**write memory**

Usage Example 1: Saving a Configuration

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#write memory
Building configuration.....
[OK]
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

### Restore Default Settings

To restore the switch to its default settings, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:  
**restore default**

Usage Example 1: Restoring Defaults

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#restore default
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

## Load Configuration from a TFTP Server

To Load a Configuration from a TFTP server, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**install config-file <tftpserver\_ipaddress> <filename>**

Usage Example: Loading a Configuration

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#install config-file 192.168.1.100 file_name.txt
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

## Save Configuration to a TFTP Server

To Save a Configuration to a TFTP server, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**write config-file <tftpserver\_ipaddress> <filename>**

Usage Example: Saving a Configuration

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#write config-file 192.168.1.100 flash.tgz
switch_a#q
switch_a>
```

## Auto Save Configuration

To set the Auto Save Configuration, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**service auto-config enable**

**no service auto-config enable**

**service auto-config interval <number>**

Usage Example 1: Enabling Auto Save and setting the interval

```
switch_a>enable
```

```
switch_a#service auto-config enable
```

```
switch_a#service auto-config interval 10
```

```
switch_a#q
```

```
switch_a>
```

Usage Example 2: Disabling Auto Save

```
switch_a>enable
```

```
switch_a#no service auto-config enable
```

```
switch_a#q
```

```
switch_a>
```

## Firmware Upgrade

To navigate to the **Firmware Upgrade** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**
2. Click on **Firmware Upgrade**

To upgrade the firmware on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, a TFTP server is required. The firmware file for the V1.94.2 EtherWAN Managed Switch is in a .TGZ or .IMG format. This is a compressed file; however, it should not be decompressed before updating the V1.94.2 EtherWAN Managed Switch.

To update the firmware on the EtherWAN Managed Switch (see [Figure 8](#)):

1. Copy the firmware file to the correct directory for your TFTP server. The correct directory depends on your TFTP server settings
2. Enter the filename of the firmware in the **Filename** text box.
3. Enter the IP Address of your TFTP server in the **TFTP Server IP** text box.
4. Click on the **Upgrade** button.
5. During the firmware upgrade you will see the following messages. Do not reboot or unplug the switch until the final message is received.
  - a. Downloading now, please wait...
  - b. `tftp <filename>.img from ip <ip address> success!!`  
Install now. This may take several minutes, please wait...
  - c. Firmware upgrade success!



Note: If a Firewall is running on the PC that is running the TFTP server it may need to be temporarily disabled.

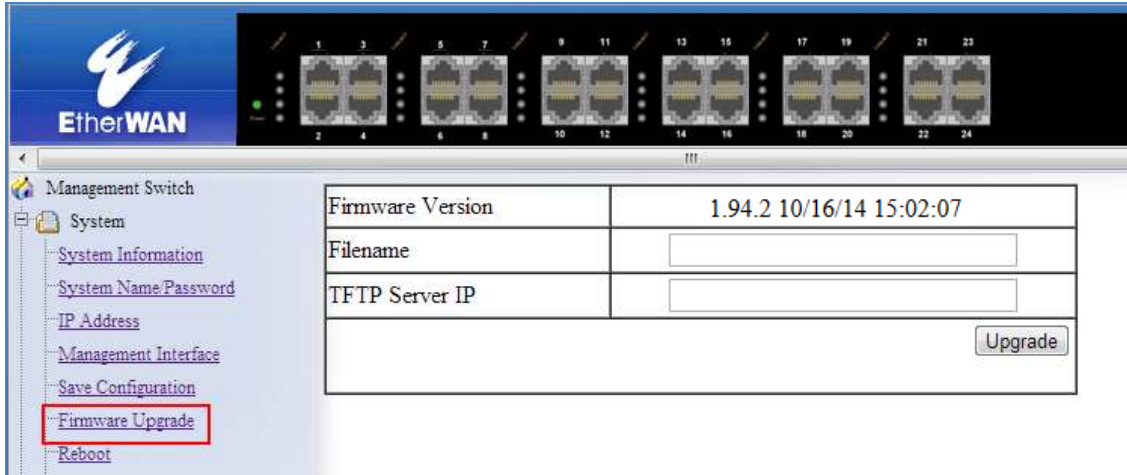


Figure 8: Firmware Upgrade Page

## Firmware Update using the CLI

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

CLI Command Mode: **Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**install image <tftpserver\_ipaddress> <filename>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#install image 192.168.1.100 flash.tgz
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```



Note: Depending on the firmware being loaded, the extension may not be .tgz. The Switch does not use the extension to validate firmware.

## Reboot

To navigate to the **Reboot** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**
2. Click on **Reboot**

To reboot the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click on the **Reboot** button.
2. Click OK on the popup message.

## Reboot using the CLI

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

CLI Command Mode: **Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**reload**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#reload
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

## Logout

To logout of the Web Configuration Console:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**
2. Click on **Logout**

## Logout from the CLI

CLI Command Mode: **Exec mode or Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**logout**

# User Account Page

To navigate to the **User Account** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**
2. Click on **User Account**

From the **User Account** page, multiple users can be setup with different access privileges to the switch. There are two modes that can be used, **Single-User** or **Multi-User**.

## Changing the User Mode

To set the user mode (see [Figure 9](#)):

1. Select **Single-User** or **Multi-User** in the dropdown box in the Multi-User Mode section.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
3. Click OK on the Popup message that appears.



Note: Changing the mode to Multi-User Mode saves the configuration and reboots the switch

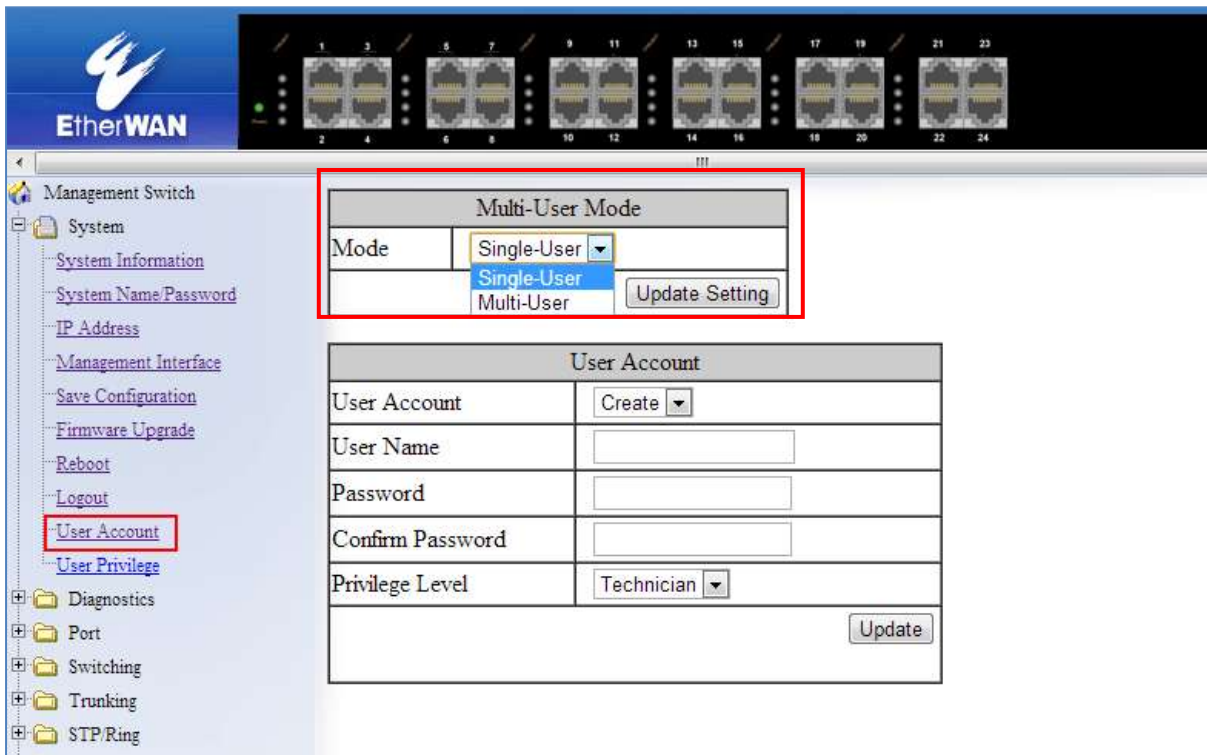


Figure 9: User Mode

## Creating a New User

To create a new user (see [Figure 10](#)):

1. Choose the **Create** option from the dropdown list next to the **User Account** row heading.
2. Enter a User Name (case sensitive) for the new user in the **User Name** text box.
3. Enter a Password for the new user in the **Password** text box.
4. Re-enter the Password in the **Confirm Password** text box.
5. Select a Privilege Level from the dropdown list next to the **Privilege Level** row heading. For more information on Privilege levels see the [User Privilege Configuration](#).
6. Click on the **Update** button.
7. Save the configuration (See the [Save Configuration Page](#))

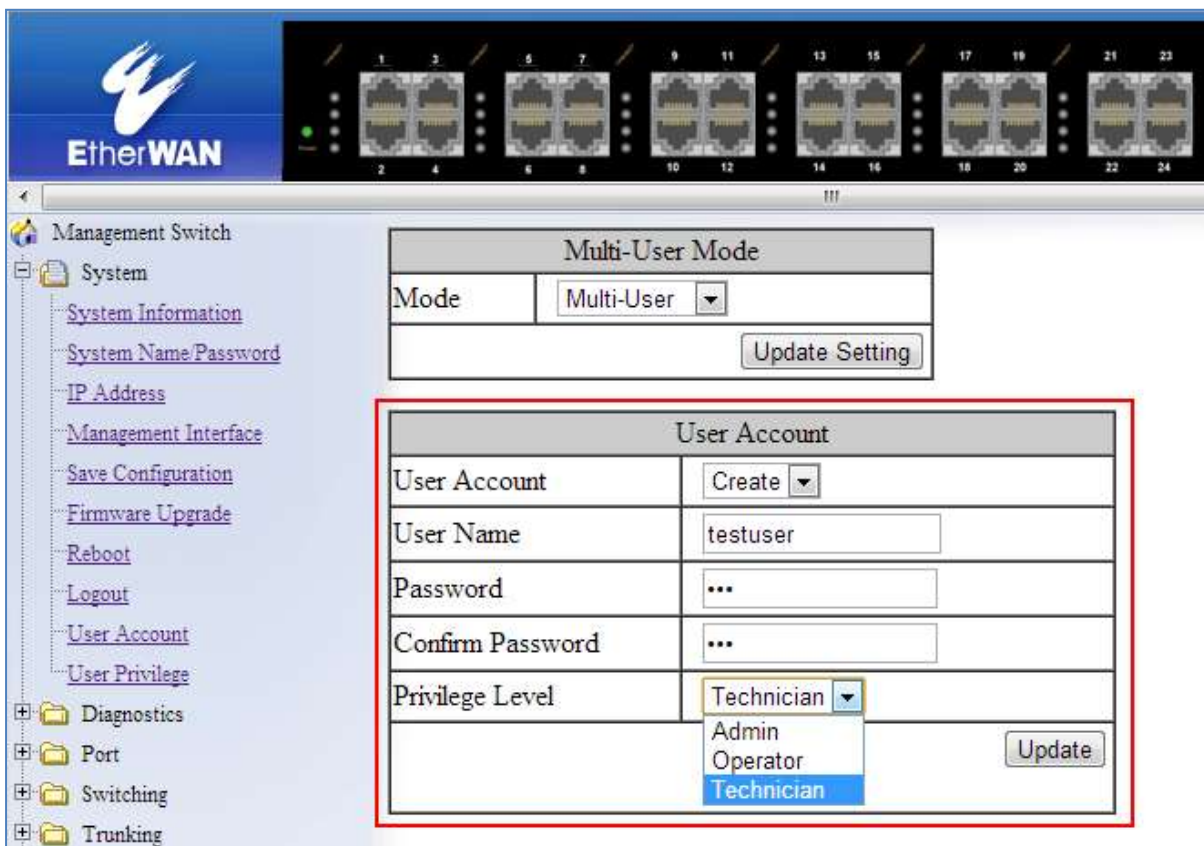


Figure 10: Creating Users

## Changing an Existing User Account

To make modifications to an existing user account:

1. Choose an existing user from the dropdown list next to the **User Account** row heading (see [Figure 11](#)).
2. Change the password and/or access level following the steps in [Creating a New User](#).
3. To delete an existing user, select the user as in step 1 and then click on the **Delete** button (see [Figure 12](#)).

User Account	
User Account	testuser <input type="button" value="v"/>
User Name	Create <input type="text"/>
Password	testuser <input type="text"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>
Privilege Level	Technician <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="Update"/>	

Figure 11: Selecting an Existing User Account

User Account	
User Account	testuser <input type="button" value="v"/>
User Name	testuser
Password	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>
Privilege Level	Technician <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>	

Figure 12: Deleting a User Account

# User Privilege Configuration

To navigate to the **User Privilege** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**.
2. Click on **User Privilege**.

There are 3 different Privilege levels on the EtherWAN Managed Switch.

- **Admin** – Has access to all configuration and administration of the switch.
- **Technician** – Configurable by Admin – By default no configuration ability is given.
- **Operator** – Configurable by Admin – By default no configuration ability is given.

The User Privilege Configuration page allows specific configuration and/or administration levels to be assigned or removed from the Technician and Operator user roles.



Note: For each function, an operator's privilege cannot be higher than a technician's

To configure the privileges for each user access level, follow the below steps:

1. For each of the configuration options listed under **Web function \ User Privilege** (see [Figure 13](#)), select the proper privilege from the drop-down list under the appropriate user access level (**Technician** or **Operator**). The valid options are:
  - a. **Show, Hidden, Read-Only, Read-Write**
2. Click on the **Update** button at the bottom of the page.
3. Save the configuration (see [Save Configuration](#))

The screenshot displays the 'User Privilege' configuration page for a Management Switch. The interface includes a navigation tree on the left and a table of privileges for Technician and Operator roles. The 'System Information' row is highlighted.

Web Function \ User Privilege	Technician	Operator	Detail
System	Show	Show	
System Information	Show	Show	
System Name/Password	Hidden	Hidden	
IP Address	Read-Only	Read-Only	
Management Interface	Read-Only	Read-Only	
Save Configuration	Hidden	Hidden	
Firmware Upgrade	Hidden	Hidden	
Reboot	Hidden	Hidden	
Logout	Show	Show	
User Account	Hidden	Hidden	
User Privilege	Hidden	Hidden	
Diagnostics	Show	Show	
Utilization	Show	Show	
System Log	Show	Show	
Remote Logging	Read-Only	Read-Only	
ARP Table	Show	Show	

Figure 13: User Privilege Page

## User Account Settings using the CLI

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

### Multi-User Mode

To enable the multi-user feature, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Line Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**login local**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#line console 0
switch_a(config-line)#login local
% Switching Single/Multi-User mode need to reboot the switch
to take effect!
switch_a(config-line)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

### Single User Mode

To enable the single-user feature, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Line Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **login**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#line console 0
switch_a(config-line)#login
% Switching Single/Multi-User mode need to reboot the switch
to take effect!
switch_a(config-line)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Creating a New User

To create a new user, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: General Configuration Mode

CLI Command Syntax:

```
username <user name-4 to 16 characters> privilege  
<admin/operator/technician> password < 8/blank> <password-1 to 35  
characters>
```



**Note:** The optional **<8>** CLI command after the CLI command **password** is used to specify that the password should be displayed in encrypted form in the configuration file.

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable  
switch_a#configure terminal  
switch_a(config)#username user1 privilege operator password 1234  
switch_a(config)#username user1 privilege operator password 8 1234  
switch_a(config)#username user2 privilege technician password 4321  
switch_a(config)#username user2 privilege technician password 8 4321  
switch_a(config)#username user3 privilege admin password 5678  
switch_a(config)#username user3 privilege admin password 8 5678  
switch_a(config)#q  
switch_a#
```

## Permissions

To set the Web GUI permissions for each privilege level, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**multiuser-access <Web GUI permission name> tech <hide/read-only/read-write/show> oper <hide/read-only/read-write/show>**

Below are the CLI names (case sensitive) for all the Web GUI permissions:

System-Name/Password	MSTP-Instance-Setting	System
IP-Address	MSTP-Port-Setting	System-Information
Save-Configuration	Ring-Setting	Logout
Firmware-Upgrade	Chain-Setting	Diagnostics
Reboot	Chain-pass-through-setting	Utilization
User-Account	Advanced-Setting	System-Log
User-Privilege	VLAN-Mode-Setting	ARP-Table
Remote-Log	802.1Q-VLAN-Setting	Route-Table
Alarm-Setting	802.1Q-Port-Setting	Port
Configuration	Port-Based-VLAN	Port-Status
Rate-Control	QosGlobal-Configuration	Per-Port-VLAN-Activities
RMON-Statistics	802.1p-Priority	Switching
Port-Security	DSCP	Trunking
Bridging	SNMP-General-Setting	STP/Ring
Loopback-Detect	SNMP-v1/v2	VLAN
Static-MAC-Entry	SNMP-v3	QoS
Port-Mirroring	Radius-Configuration	SNMP
Link-State-Tracking	Port-Authentication	802.1X
Port-Trunking	LLDP-General-Settings	LLDP
LACP-Trunking	LLDP-Ports-Settings	LLDP-Neighbors
Global-Configuration	GVRP; IGMP-Snooping	LLDP-Statistics
RSTP-Port-Setting	NTP GMRP	Others-Protocols
MSTP-Prties	DHCP-Server	

### Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#multiuser-access IP-Address tech read-write oper
read-only
switch_a(config)#multiuser-access System-Log tech show oper hide
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# DIAGNOSTICS

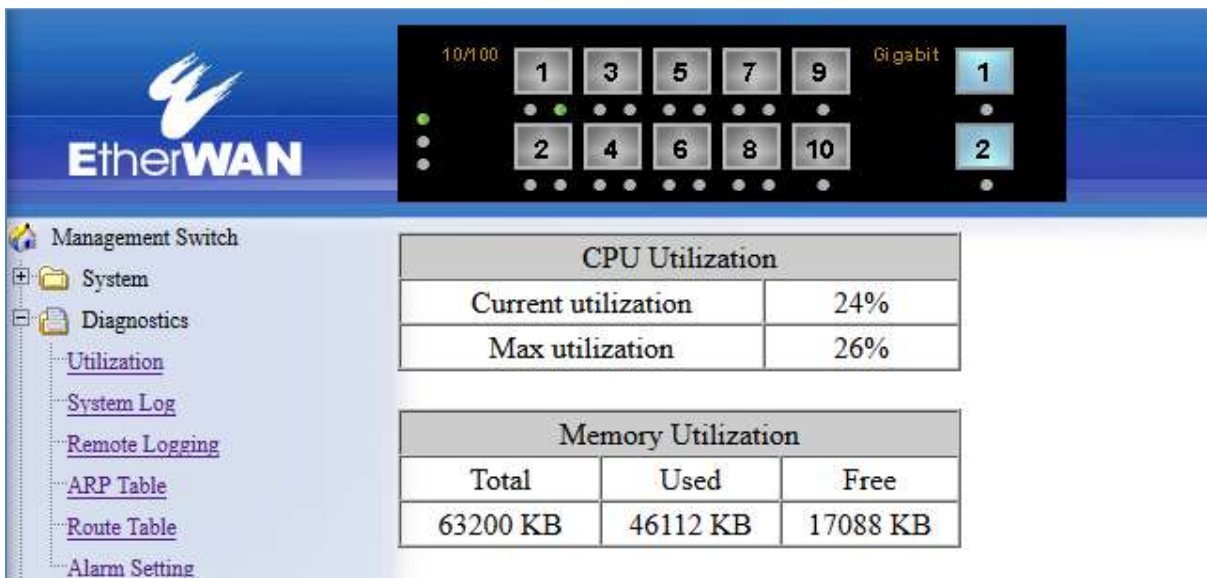
## Utilization

To navigate to the **Utilization** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Diagnostics**.
2. Click on **Utilization**.

The **Utilization** page shows (see [Figure 14](#)):

- **CPU Utilization** – Current and Max Utilization
- **Memory Utilization** – Total, Used and Free Memory



**Figure 14: Utilization Page**

# System Log

To navigate to the **System Log** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Diagnostics**.
2. Click on **System Log**.

The System Log shows the data and time of port links going up or down (see [Figure 15](#))

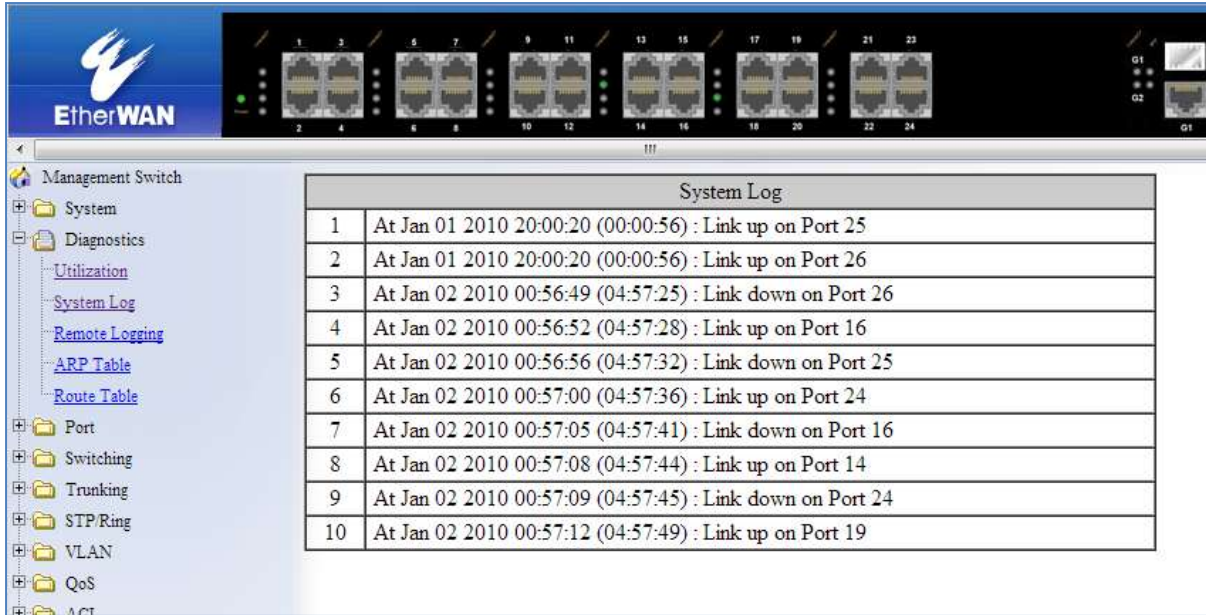


Figure 15: System Log

## System log using CLI command

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

CLI Command Mode: **Exec Mode or Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**show system-log**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a#show system-log  
switch_a#q  
switch_a#
```

## Remote Logging

To navigate to the **Remote Logging** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Diagnostics**.
2. Click on **Remote Logging**.

Remote Logging to a Syslog server allows administrators to log important system and debugging information. The Remote Logging configuration page allows reporting to a Syslog server to be enabled or disabled as well as management of a list of Syslog servers to report to (see [Figure 16](#)).

To configure the Remote Logging on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

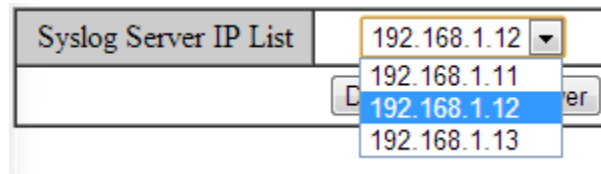
1. Click on the **Enable** or **Disable** radio button under Remote Logging.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

To add a Syslog server:

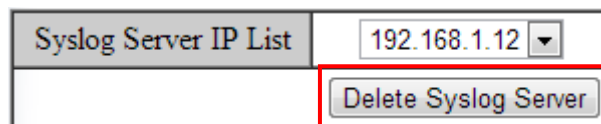
1. Enter the IP Address of the Syslog Server in the **Syslog Server IP** text box.
2. Click on the **Add Syslog Server** button.

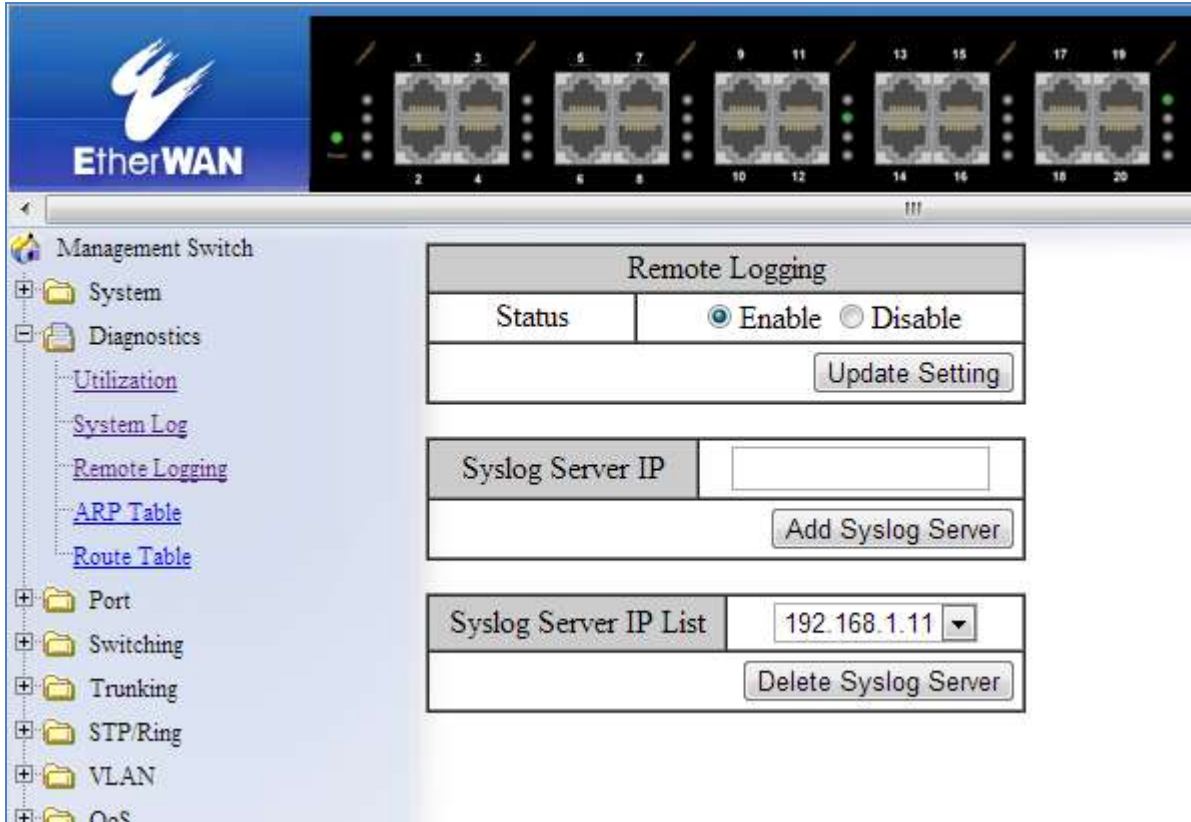
To delete a Syslog server from the list of servers currently on the switch:

1. Select the Syslog server from the Drop down box



2. Click on the **Delete Syslog Server** button





**Figure 16: Remote Logging Page**

## Remote Logging using CLI commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

### Enable/Disable Remote Logging

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**remote-log enable**

**no remote-log enable**

Usage Example 1: Enable Remote Logging

```
switch_a>enable  
switch_a#remote-log enable  
switch_a#q  
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Disable Remote Logging

```
switch_a>enable  
switch_a#no remote-log enable  
switch_a#q  
switch_a#
```

### Add/Delete a Remote Logging Host

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**remote-log add <ip\_address>**

**remote-log del <ip\_address>**

**remote-log del all**

Usage Example 1: Add a Remote Logging Host

```
switch_a>enable  
switch_a#remote-log add 192.168.1.100  
switch_a#q  
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Delete a Remote Logging Host

```
switch_a>enable  
switch_a#remote-log del 192.168.1.100  
switch_a#q  
switch_a#
```

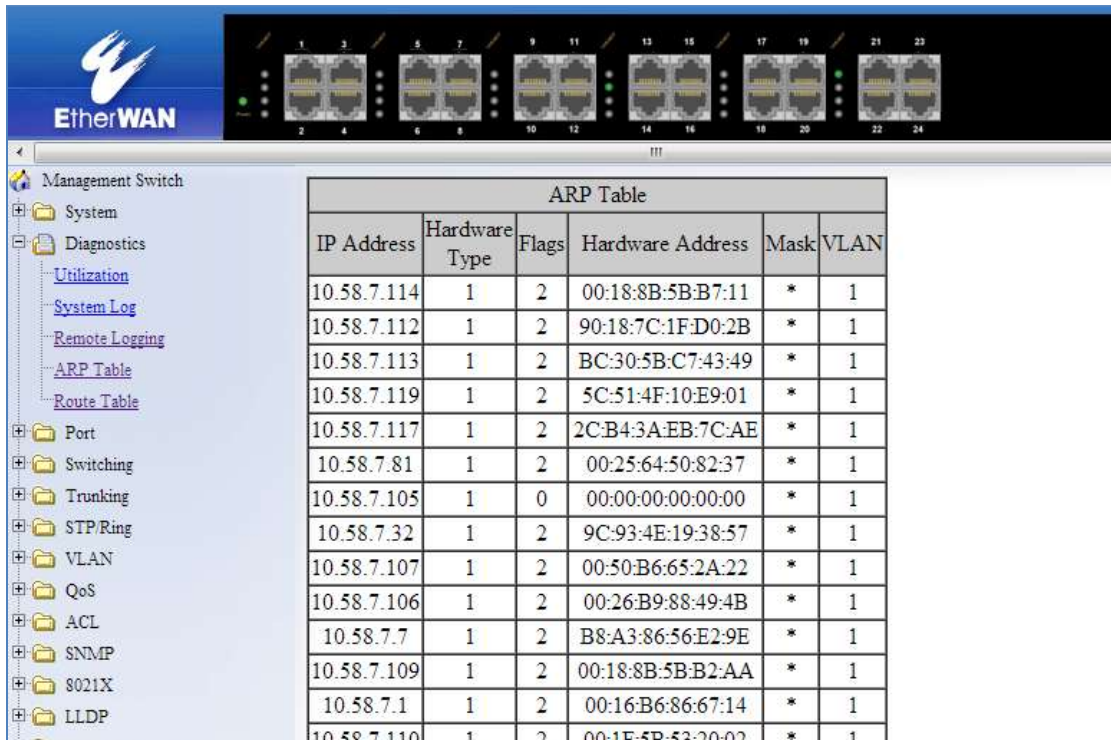
# ARP Table

To navigate to the **ARP Table** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Diagnostics**.
2. Click on **ARP Table**.

The ARP Table page shows ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) entries that are stored in the Switches ARP Table. This is useful for System Administrators for troubleshooting purposes. The information shown is:

- **IP Address** of the listed device
- **Hardware Address** – For Ethernet devices this will always be **1**.
- **Flags**
  - **2** = Device responded to ARP Request
  - **0** = No response to ARP Request
- **Hardware Address** – MAC Address of the listed device
- **VLAN** – The VLAN that the listed device is on



ARP Table						
IP Address	Hardware Type	Flags	Hardware Address	Mask	VLAN	
10.58.7.114	1	2	00:18:8B:5B:B7:11	*	1	
10.58.7.112	1	2	90:18:7C:1F:D0:2B	*	1	
10.58.7.113	1	2	BC:30:5B:C7:43:49	*	1	
10.58.7.119	1	2	5C:51:4F:10:E9:01	*	1	
10.58.7.117	1	2	2C:B4:3A:EB:7C:AE	*	1	
10.58.7.81	1	2	00:25:64:50:82:37	*	1	
10.58.7.105	1	0	00:00:00:00:00:00	*	1	
10.58.7.32	1	2	9C:93:4E:19:38:57	*	1	
10.58.7.107	1	2	00:50:B6:65:2A:22	*	1	
10.58.7.106	1	2	00:26:B9:88:49:4B	*	1	
10.58.7.7	1	2	B8:A3:86:56:E2:9E	*	1	
10.58.7.109	1	2	00:18:8B:5B:B2:AA	*	1	
10.58.7.1	1	2	00:16:B6:86:67:14	*	1	
10.58.7.110	1	2	00:1E:5B:53:20:02	*	1	

**Figure 17: ARP Table**

## ARP Table using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**show arp-table**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
```

```
switch_a#show arp-table
```

IP address	HW type	Flags	HW address	Mask	VLAN
10.58.7.130	1	2	00:50:B6:65:2A:22	*	1

```
switch_a#q
```

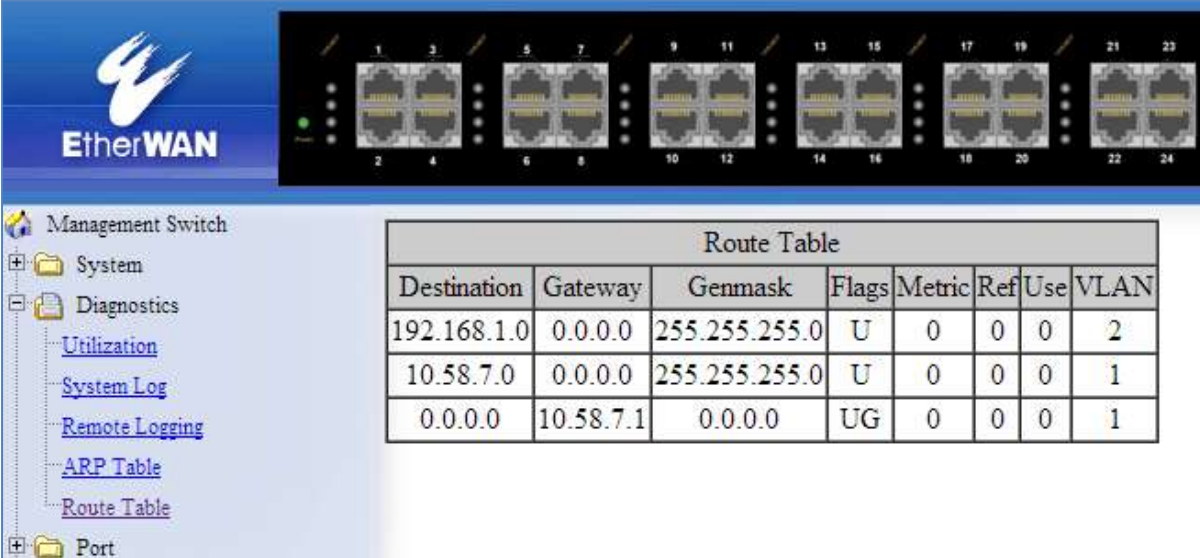
```
switch_a#
```

## Route Table

To navigate to the **Route Table** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Diagnostics**.
2. Click on **Route Table**.

The Route Table lists the routes to network destinations and metrics (distances) that are associated with those routes. The Route Table contains information about the topology of the network around it.



The screenshot shows the EtherWAN Management Switch interface. At the top, there is a header with the EtherWAN logo and a row of 24 numbered ports (1-24) with status indicators. Below the header is a navigation menu on the left with options: Management Switch, System, Diagnostics (expanded), Utilization, System Log, Remote Logging, ARP Table, Route Table (selected), and Port. The main content area displays a table titled "Route Table" with the following data:

Destination	Gateway	Genmask	Flags	Metric	Ref	Use	VLAN
192.168.1.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0	2
10.58.7.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0	1
0.0.0.0	10.58.7.1	0.0.0.0	UG	0	0	0	1

Figure 18: Route Table

## Route Table Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**show route-table**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#show route-table
Destination      Gateway          Genmask          Flags Metric Ref  Use  VLAN
10.58.7.0        0.0.0.0          255.255.255.0   U      0     0    0    1
switch_a#q
switch_a#
```

## Alarm Setting

This setting applies only to Switch models that have a hardware relay.

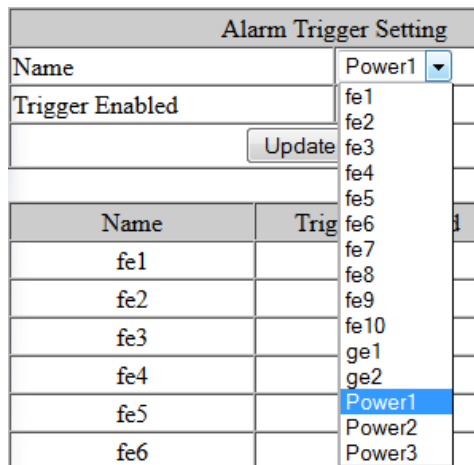
To navigate to the **Alarm Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Diagnostics**.
2. Click on **Alarm Setting**.

The Alarm Setting page allows users to define Ethernet port **Link-down** and Power failure alarms for triggering an alarm using the relay on the switch.

To configure an Ethernet port or Power input:

1. Select an Ethernet port or Power input from the dropdown box (see [Figure 19](#)).

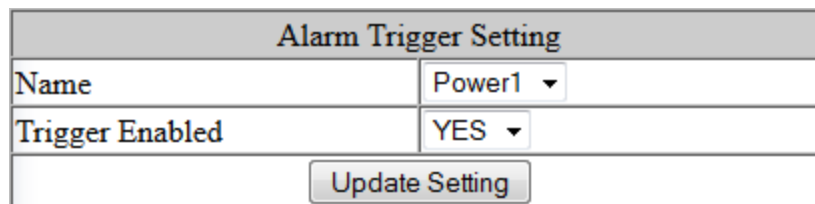


The screenshot shows the 'Alarm Trigger Setting' form. The 'Name' field is set to 'Power1'. The 'Trigger Enabled' field is currently empty. A dropdown menu is open, showing a list of options: fe1, fe2, fe3, fe4, fe5, fe6, fe7, fe8, fe9, fe10, ge1, ge2, Power1 (highlighted), Power2, and Power3. An 'Update' button is visible below the dropdown.

Alarm Trigger Setting	
Name	Power1
Trigger Enabled	
Update	
Name	Trig
fe1	
fe2	
fe3	
fe4	
fe5	
fe6	
fe7	
fe8	
fe9	
fe10	
ge1	
ge2	
Power1	
Power2	
Power3	

**Figure 19: Alarm Trigger**

3. Select **YES** or **NO** from the dropdown box next to Trigger Enabled (see [Figure 20](#)).
4. Click **Update Setting** to save any changes made.



The screenshot shows the 'Alarm Trigger Setting' form. The 'Name' field is set to 'Power1'. The 'Trigger Enabled' field is now set to 'YES'. An 'Update Setting' button is visible below the form.

Alarm Trigger Setting	
Name	Power1
Trigger Enabled	YES
Update Setting	

**Figure 20: Trigger Enable**

# PORT

## Configuration

To navigate to the **Configuration** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Port**.
2. Click on **Configuration**.

Port configuration contains such useful features as flow control, port speed, and duplex settings. Some users will find these settings very valuable such as when the switch is connect to a latency-critical device such as a VOIP phone or IP camera or video multiplexor. In these cases and others the ability to alter the port settings can make the difference between a poorly responding device and one that functions without loss of data or clarity.

.The **Configuration** page shows (see [Figure 21](#)):

- **Port Number** – fe(n) for 100mb ports and ge(n) for Gigabit ports
- **Link Status** – Operational State of the Port's Link (Read-Only)
- **Port Description** – User-supplied Port Description
- **Admin Setting** – Administratively Enable or Disable the Port.
- **Speed** – Speed and Duplex Settings for Port.
- **Flow Control** – State of Flow Control for the Port.

To provide a description to a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click in the **Description** text box for the appropriate port.
2. Type in the description of the port.
3. Click on the **Submit** button.

To enable or disable a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click on the drop-down box under Admin Setting and select either **Link Up** or **Link Down**.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

To set the Port Speed and/or Port Duplex Settings on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click on the drop-down box under Speed and select the desired port speed / duplex settings for that port. Please note, not all port types will have the same options. For example, 100Mb fiber ports will typically be limited to a single option of 100M/FD (100Mbps and Full Duplex) while running 1Gb UTP ports will have six options for speed/duplex.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

To enable or disable a port's Flow Control settings on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click on the drop-down box under Flow Control and select either Enable or Disable.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

The screenshot shows the EtherWAN Managed Switch configuration interface. At the top, there is a header with the EtherWAN logo and a network diagram showing 10 ports (1-10) and two Gigabit ports (1, 2). Below the header is a navigation tree on the left with options like Management Switch, System, Diagnostics, Port, Configuration, Port Status, Rate Control, RMON Statistics, Per Port VLAN Activities, Port Security, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, VLAN, QoS, SNMP, 802.1X, and LLDP. The main area displays a table of port configurations.

Port	Link Status	Port Description	Admin Setting	Speed	Flow Control
fe1	Running		Link Up	Auto	Enable
fe2	Down		Link Up	Auto	Enable
fe3	Down		Link Up	Auto	Enable
fe4	Down		Link Up	Auto	Enable
fe5	Down		Link Up	Auto	Enable
fe6	Down		Link Up	Auto	Enable
fe7	Down		Link Up	Auto	Enable
fe8	Down		Link Up	Auto	Enable
fe9	Down		Link Up	100M/FD	Enable
fe10	Down		Link Up	100M/FD	Enable
ge1	Down		Link Up	Auto	Enable
ge2	Down		Link Up	Auto	Enable

At the bottom right of the table area, there is a **Submit** button.

**Figure 21: Port Configuration**

## Port Status

To navigate to the **Port Status** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Port**.
2. Click on **Port Status**.

This page is a read-only page that lists the settings described in the previous section. It is useful if all the user intends to do is read the values of the port settings, not modify the port settings. .The Port Status page shows (see [Figure 22](#)):

- **Port Number** – fe(n) for 100mb ports and ge(n) for Gigabit ports
- **Link Status** – Operational State of the Port’s Link.
- **Port Description** – User-supplied Port Description
- **Admin Setting** – Administratively State of the Port.
- **Speed** – Speed and Duplex Settings for Port.
- **Flow Control** – State of Flow Control for the Port.

Port	Link Status	Port Description	Speed	Duplex	Flow Control
fe1	Running		100M	Auto	Enable
fe2	Down		100M	Auto	Enable
fe3	Down		100M	Auto	Enable
fe4	Down		100M	Auto	Enable
fe5	Down		100M	Auto	Enable
fe6	Down		100M	Auto	Enable
fe7	Down		100M	Auto	Enable
fe8	Down		100M	Auto	Enable
fe9	Down		100M	Full	Enable
fe10	Down		100M	Full	Enable
ge1	Down		1000M	Auto	Enable
ge2	Down		1000M	Auto	Enable

**Figure 22: Port Status**

# Rate Control

To navigate to the **Rate Control** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Port**.
2. Click on **Rate Control**.

The Rate Control page allows the user to set the maximum throughput on a port or ports on both packets entering the port (from the connected device) or packets leaving the port.

The **Ingress** text box controls the rate of data traveling into the port while the **Egress** text box controls the rate of data leaving the port.



**Note:** Entries will be rounded down to the nearest acceptable rate value. If the value entered is below the lowest acceptable value then the lowest acceptable value will be used.

The Rate Control page is shown below (see [Figure 23](#)):

To provide either an ingress or egress rate control for a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click in the Ingress or Egress Text Box for the appropriate port.
2. Type in the ingress/egress rate for the port according to the values listed above.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

The screenshot shows the EtherWAN web interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the EtherWAN logo and a port status indicator showing 10/100 and Gigabit ports. Below the navigation bar is a sidebar menu with options like Management Switch, System, Diagnostics, Port, Configuration, Port Status, Rate Control, RMON Statistics, Per Port VLAN Activities, Port Security, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, VLAN, QoS, SNMP, 802.1X, and LLDP. The main content area displays a table with columns for Port, Ingress, and Egress. The table lists ports fe1 through fe10 and ge1 through ge2. The Ingress and Egress columns show values in kbps. An 'Update Setting' button is located at the bottom right of the table.

Port	Ingress	Egress
fe1	0 kbps	0 kbps
fe2	0 kbps	0 kbps
fe3	115187 kbps	38375 kbps
fe4	0 kbps	0 kbps
fe5	0 kbps	0 kbps
fe6	0 kbps	0 kbps
fe7	0 kbps	0 kbps
fe8	0 kbps	0 kbps
fe9	0 kbps	0 kbps
fe10	0 kbps	0 kbps
ge1	0 kbps	0 kbps
ge2	0 kbps	0 kbps

**Figure 23: Rate Control**

## RMON Statistics

To navigate to the **RMON Statistics** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Port**.
2. Click on **RMON Statistics**.

RMON Statistics gives a detailed listing of the types and quantity of packets that a particular port has seen since the last reboot of the switch (see [Figure 24](#)).

To view the RMON statistics for a particular port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click on the link to the port at the top of the RMON Statistics page.

To clear the RMON statistics for a particular port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click on the link to the port at the top of the RMON Statistics page.
2. Click on the **Clear** button at the bottom of the page.
3. The statistics for the port will update every ten seconds.



Pay particular attention to the values for CRC/Alignment errors and collisions. Nonzero values for these fields can indicate that a port speed or duplex mismatch exists on the port.

<a href="#">fe1</a>	<a href="#">fe2</a>	<a href="#">fe3</a>	<a href="#">fe4</a>	<a href="#">fe5</a>	<a href="#">fe6</a>
<a href="#">fe7</a>	<a href="#">fe8</a>	<a href="#">fe9</a>	<a href="#">fe10</a>	<a href="#">ge1</a>	<a href="#">ge2</a>
<b>Port 1/fe1 Statistics</b>					
Drop Events	0				
Broadcast Packets Received	836467				
Multicast Packets Received	1584880				
Undersize Packets Received	0				
Oversize Packets Received	0				
Fragments Packets Received	0				
64-byte Packets Received	606350				
65 to 127-byte Packets Received	381794				
128 to 255-byte Packets Received	321375				
256 to 511-byte Packets Received	961517				
512 to 1023-byte Packets Received	163465				
1024 to 1518-byte Packets Received	4339				
Jabber Packets	0				
Bytes Received	574580429				
Packets Received	2438841				
Collisions	0				
CRC/Alignment Errors Received	0				
TX No Errors	312082				
RX No Errors	2438841				
<i>Status of statistics will be refresh per 30 seconds after click Clear.</i>					
<input type="button" value="Clear"/>					

**Figure 24: RMON Page**

## Per Port VLAN Activities

To navigate to the **Per Port VLAN Activities** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Port**.
2. Click on **Per Port VLAN Activities**.

This is a read-only page that will allow the user to see what devices are connected to a particular port and the vlan associated with that device and port.

To clear the MAC addresses for a particular port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch (see [Figure 25](#)):

1. Click on the link to the port at the top of the Per Port VLAN Activities page.
2. Click on the **Clear MAC** button at the bottom of the page.
3. The statistics for the port will update every ten seconds.

The screenshot displays the EtherWAN Managed Switch web interface. At the top, there is a port status overview showing 10/100 ports (1-10) and Gigabit ports (1-2). Below this, a grid of port links (fe1-10, ge1-2) is highlighted with a red box. The main content area shows the 'Port 1/fe1 status' page. It features a table with the following data:

Total VLAN Count	1
Total MAC Address Count	1
VLAN Membership	MAC Address
VLAN1	b8ac.6fb4.dcaf

At the bottom of the table, a 'Clear MAC' button is highlighted with a red box.

**Figure 25: Port VLAN Activities**

# Port Security

To navigate to the **Port Security** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Port**.
2. Click on **Port Security**.

The Port Security submenu allows the user to control access to the ports on the switch based on the source MAC addresses of the network devices.

To Add a MAC Address to a port:

1. Select the **Enable or Disable** from the **Mode** column for the port you want to configure.
2. Enter the MAC Address of the device you want to connect to the port
3. Click **Update Setting**.

To remove a MAC Address from a port

1. Select the **MAC Address** from the Dropdown list next to the port that you want to configure (see [Figure 26](#))
2. Click on **Update Setting**.

Port	Mode	Add MAC address (Ex:0000.1122.3344)	Delete MAC address
fe1	Enable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe2	Disable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="0000.1122.3344"/>
fe3	Disable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe4	Disable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe5	Disable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe6	Disable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe7	Disable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe8	Disable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe9	Disable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe10	Disable ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

**Figure 26: Port Security**

# Port Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

## Setting the Port Description

To provide a description of a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **description <description text>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)#description A_Port_Description
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enable or Disable a Port

To administratively enable or disable a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**shutdown**

**no shutdown**

Usage Example 1: Disabling a port:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)#shutdown
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Enabling a port:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)#no shutdown
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting the Port Speed

To set the port speed for a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bandwidth <1-10000000000 bits>** (usable units : k, m, g)

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)#bandwidth 100m
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting Port Duplex

To set the duplex for a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **duplex <full | half | auto>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)#duplex full
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enable or Disable Port FlowControl

To enable or disable flowcontrol for a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **flowcontrol on**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)#flowcontrol on
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Display Port Status

To display the port status for a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **show interface <ifname>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#show interface fe1
```

## Setting a Ports Rate Control

To set a ports rate control use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **rate-control <ingress / egress> value <value in kbps>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)#rate-control ingress value 100000
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Display a Ports RMON Statistics

To display a ports RMON statistics use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **show interface statistics <interface name>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#show interface statistics fe1
switch_a#
```

## Display a Ports VLAN Activities

To display a port's VLAN activities use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Privileged Exec Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **show bridge interface <interface name>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#show bridge interface fe1
switch_a#
```

## Setting MAC Port Security

To enable MAC port security use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **port-security enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)# port-security enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To disable MAC port security use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **no port-security enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)# no port-security enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the allowed MAC addresses use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **port-security allowed-address <value>**  
(in hex format. Ex. 00aa.0062.c609)

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)# port-security allowed-address 00aa.0062.c609
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To delete an allowed MAC address use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **no port-security allowed-address <value>**  
(in hex format. Ex. 00aa.0062.c609)

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fe1
switch_a(config-if)# no port-security allowed-address 00aa.0062.c609
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# SWITCHING

## Bridging

To learn MAC addresses, a switch reads all packets that it detects on the LAN or on the local VLAN, looking for MAC addresses of sending nodes. It places these addresses into its Ethernet Switching table, along with the interface on which the traffic was received and the time when the address was learned. When the switch receives traffic on an interface, it searches the Ethernet switching table for the MAC address of the destination. If the MAC address is not found, the traffic is flooded out all of the other interfaces associated with the VLAN. If traffic is received on an interface that is associated with VLAN 1 and there is no entry in the Ethernet switching table for VLAN 1, then the traffic is flooded to all access and trunk interfaces that are members of VLAN 1.

Flooding allows the switch to learn about destinations that are not yet in its Ethernet switching table. If a certain destination MAC address is not in the Ethernet switching table, the switch floods the traffic to all interfaces except the interface on which it was received. When the destination node receives the flooded traffic, it sends an acknowledgment packet back to the switch, allowing the switch to learn the MAC address of the node and to add the address to its Ethernet switching table.

The switch uses a process called aging to keep the Ethernet switching table current. For each MAC address in the Ethernet switching table, the switch records a timestamp of when the information about the network node was learned. Each time the switch detects traffic from a MAC address that is in its Ethernet switching table, it updates the timestamp of that MAC address. A timer on the switch periodically checks the timestamp, and if it is older than the value set for **mac-table-aging-time**, the switch removes the node's MAC address from the Ethernet switching table. This aging process ensures that the switch tracks only active MAC addresses on the network and that it is able to flush out from the Ethernet switching table MAC addresses that are no longer available.

The user can configure:

- How long MAC addresses remain in the Ethernet switching table
- Add a MAC address permanently to the switching table
- Prevent a MAC address from ever being registered in the switching table.

To navigate to the **Bridging** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Switching**.
2. Click on **Bridging**.

## Aging Time

The Aging Time value is a global value and represents the time that a networked device's MAC address will live in the switch's memory before being removed. The default value is 300s (5 minutes) (see [Figure 27](#)).

To update the Aging Time value on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click in the Error Disable Recovery text box at the top of the Port Security Dynamic-MAC page.
2. Type in the desired value. Values can be from **0 to 65535 seconds**. A value of **0** indicates that the port is not to return to normal operating condition until an administrator resets the port or the switch is restarted.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

## Threshold Level

The **Threshold Level** setting is a **per port value**. A traffic *storm* occurs when packets flood the LAN, creating excessive traffic and degrading network performance. The traffic *storm control* feature prevents LAN ports from being disrupted by a broadcast or multicast traffic *storm* on physical interfaces. A Threshold is set to determine when the switch will react to Broadcasts and/or Multicasts.

To set the Threshold level per port:

1. Type in the desired value. Values can be from **0.1 to 100**. This value is a percentage of allowable broadcast traffic for this port. Once this percentage of traffic is exceeded, all broadcast traffic beyond this percentage is dropped.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

## Storm Control Type

The **Storm Control Enabled Type** setting is a per port value. The Storm Control Enabled Type allows users to determine the type of storm control to be used by the switch.

To set the Storm Control Enabled Type:

1. Select the check box next to **Broadcast** and/or **DFL-Multicast** for the port that needs to be changed
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

## Port Isolation

The **Port Isolation** setting is a **per port value**. Port Isolation can be used to isolate a port or ports so that only the isolated ports can communicate with one another (see [Figure 27](#)).

To update the Port Isolation value for a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click on the **Port Isolation** drop-down box for the port to be isolated.
2. Select the value **enable** on the Port Isolation drop-down box.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
4. Repeat as necessary for all ports that are to be isolated.

## Block Multicast

The Block Multicast setting is a per port value. Block Multicast is a straight-forward description of a feature that is used to block multicast traffic from accessing a port (see [Figure 27](#)).

To update the **Block Multicast** value for a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Click on the **Block Multicast** drop-down box for the port to be isolated.
2. Select the value **enable** on the Block Multicast drop-down box.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
4. Repeat as necessary for all ports that are to have multicast traffic blocked.

The screenshot displays the EtherWAN web interface for configuring a switch. At the top, there is a status bar showing port configurations: 10/100 ports 1, 3, 5, 7, 9 and Gigabit ports 1, 2. The left sidebar contains a navigation tree with categories like System, Diagnostics, Port, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, VLAN, QoS, SNMP, 802.1X, LLDP, and Others Protocols. The 'Switching' category is expanded to show 'Bridging' options: Loopback Detect, Storm Detect, Static MAC Entry, Port Mirroring, Link State Tracking, PoE, and PoE Scheduling. The main content area shows the 'Ageing Time (seconds)' set to 300 with an 'Update Setting' button. Below this is a table for configuring port settings for ports fe1 through fe10 and ge1 through ge2.

Port	Threshold Level (0.1-100)	Storm Control Enabled Type	Port Isolation
fe1	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
fe2	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
fe3	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
fe4	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
fe5	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
fe6	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
fe7	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
fe8	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
fe9	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
fe10	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
ge1	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾
ge2	Level <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast <input type="checkbox"/> DLF-Multicast	Disable ▾

Below the table is an 'Update Setting' button.

**Figure 27: Bridging**

## Loopback Detect

Loopback detection is quite simply the ability of the switch to detect when a port on the switch has been connected directly (or “looped back”) to another port on the switch. This configuration would likely lead to a broadcast storm on the switch which would cause network performance to suffer. Loopback detection offers the ability of the switch to detect this condition and shutdown the loop-backed port before any disruption of network traffic occurs.

To navigate to the **Loopback Detect** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Switching**.
2. Click on **Loopback Detect**.

### Loopback Detection (Global)

To globally enable the **Loopback Detect** feature of the EtherWAN Managed Switch (see [Figure 28](#)):

1. Click on the **Loopback Detect** drop-down box.
2. Select **Enable** from the drop down list.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

### Loopback Detect Action

To change the action that the switch takes when a loopback condition is detected (see [Figure 28](#)):

1. Choose an action from the **Loopback Detect Action** dropdown list. The available options are **None** and **Error Disable**.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

### Loopback Detect Recovery Time

To change the length of time that the **Loopback Detect Action** will stay in effect (see [Figure 28](#)):

1. Enter a value in the text box next to **Error Disable Recovery**. Valid values range from **0 to 65535 seconds**.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

## Polling Interval

To change the polling interval of the Loopback Detect function (see [Figure 28](#)):

1. Enter a value in the text box next to **Interval**. Valid values range from **1 to 65535** seconds.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

General Setting	
LoopBack Detect	Disable (default) ▾
LoopBack Detect Action	None (default) ▾
Error Disable Recovery (0-65535 seconds, Default:0)	0 <input type="text"/>
Interval (1-30 seconds, Default:1)	1 <input type="text"/>
NOTE:Error Disable Recovery must over two times of Interval.	
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

Figure 28: Loopback Detection

## Loopback Detection (Per Port)

To enable **Loopback Detection** for a particular port or ports on the EtherWAN Managed Switch (see [Figure 29](#)):

1. Select the value **Enable** from the **Mode** drop down list for a port on the Loopback Detect page.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

Port	Mode	State
fe1	Disable (default) ▼	--
fe2	Disable (default) ▼	--
fe3	Disable (default) ▼	--
fe4	Disable (default) ▼	--
fe5	Disable (default) ▼	--
fe6	Disable (default) ▼	--
fe7	Disable (default) ▼	--
fe8	Disable (default) ▼	--
fe9	Enable ▼	Normal
fe10	Enable ▼	Normal
ge1	Disable (default) ▼	--
ge2	Disable (default) ▼	--

**Figure 29: Loopback Detection (port)**

## Storm Detect

The **Storm Detect** feature allows the switch to be configured to disable a port that is receiving a large number of Broadcast and/or Multicast packets. The switch can monitor for packets and take action based on percentage of bandwidth utilization or number of packets per second.

To navigate to the **Storm Detect** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Switching**.
2. Click on **Storm Detect**.

### Enable/Disable Storm Detection

1. **Enable** or **Disable** Storm Detection by Clicking on the drop down box in the **Storm-Detect Configuration** box (see [Figure 30](#)).
2. Set the **Storm Detect interval** to a number between **2 and 65535** seconds. The Default value is 10 seconds.
3. Set the **Storm-Detect errdisable-recovery time** to value between **0 and 65535 seconds**. The Default is 0 (disabled). This value determines if the switch should re-enable the port after the specified value or leave the port disabled.

Bridge Storm-Detect Configuration	
Storm-Detect configuration	Enable ▾
Storm-Detect interval (2..65535 sec), Default: 10	10
Storm-Detect errdisable-recovery time (0..65535 sec), 0:no recovery	10
Storm-Detect state of action	Errdisable

**Figure 30: Storm Detect – Global**

4. Set the **By Utilization(%)** for each port in the **Storm-Detect Per Port Configuration** box (see [Figure 31](#)). The default is 0 (not limited). Setting this to a value between 1 and 100 will cause the port to be disabled when the defined percentage of bandwidth is reached.
5. Set the type of packet to be monitored in the Dropdown box under **By Broadcast / Multicast+Broadcast Packets Per Second**. Set the value to **BC** to monitor Broadcast packets and **BC-MC** to monitor both Broadcast and Multicast packets.

- Set the number of **packets per second** to a value between 0 and 1000000 packets. The default is 0 (not limited).

Storm-Detect Per Port Configuration				
Port	State / Recovery time remains	By Utilization(%) (0-100) 0: not limited	By Broadcast / Multicast+Broadcast Packets Per Second (0-100000) 0: not limited	
fe1	Normal / NA	<input type="text" value="80"/>	MC-BC ▾	<input type="text" value="3000"/>
fe2	Normal / NA	<input type="text" value="80"/>	MC-BC ▾	<input type="text" value="3000"/>
fe3	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>
fe4	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>
fe5	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>
fe6	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>
fe7	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>
fe8	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>
fe9	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>
fe10	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>
ge1	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>
ge2	No Detecting	<input type="text" value="0"/>	BC ▾	<input type="text" value="0"/>

**Figure 31: Storm Detect – Per Port**

## Static MAC Entry

Occasionally, it may be useful to specify a MAC address on a particular port and VLAN rather than adjusting the ageing time for the entire switch. Alternatively, it is also possible and even desirable to prevent a MAC address from ever being registered with a switch. These features are offered under the **Static MAC Entry** menu.

To navigate to the **Static MAC Entry** menu:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Switching**.
2. Click on **Static MAC Entry**.

### Adding a Static MAC Address to a Port

To add a static MAC entry for a particular port (see [Figure 32](#)):

1. Enter the MAC address for end the corresponding port's text box. The format of the MAC address should be in the form **aaa:bbb:ccc**.
2. Select the VLAN that this MAC address is associated with from the **VLAN ID** drop down list for the port.
3. Click on the **Submit** button.

Port	Add MAC Address (Ex: 0000.1111.2222)	VLAN ID	Delete MAC Address
fe1	<input type="text" value="e0b3.1234.abcf"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe5	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Figure 32: MAC Static Entry

## Removing a Static MAC Address from a Port

To remove a static MAC entry for a particular port (see [Figure 33](#)):

1. For a particular port, select the MAC address to be deleted from the **Delete MAC Address** drop down box.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

Static-MAC-Entry Forward			
Port	Add MAC Address (Ex: 0000.1111.2222)	VLAN ID	Delete MAC Address
fe1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="e0b3.1234.abcf vlan 1"/>
fe3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe5	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
fe6	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

**Figure 33: Removing a Static MAC**

## Adding a MAC to the Static-MAC-Entry Discard Table

To add a MAC address to the **Static-MAC-Entry Discard** table (see [Figure 34](#)):

1. Enter a MAC address in the form “0000.1234.abdc” in the **Add MAC Address** text box of the **Static-MAC-Entry-Discard** section.
2. Select the VLAN associated with the MAC address.
3. It should be noted that while static MAC address for forwarding are associated with the switch on a per-port basis. Static MAC discards are associated with the switch for all ports.
4. Click on the **Submit** button.

Static-MAC-Entry Discard		
Add MAC Address (Ex: 0000.1111.2222)	VLAN ID	Delete MAC Address
<input type="text" value="aabb.1289.cdf3"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Submit"/>		

**Figure 34: Adding a MAC – Static-MAC-Entry Table**

## Removing a MAC address from the Static-MAC-Entry Discard Table

To remove a MAC address from the **Static-MAC-Entry Discard** table (see [Figure 35](#)):

1. From the drop down box underneath **Delete MAC Address**, select the MAC address to be deleted.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

Add MAC Address (Ex: 0000.1111.2222)	VLAN ID	Delete MAC Address
<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="↓"/>	00eb.0321.45ad vlan 1 ↓
<input type="button" value="Submit"/>		

**Figure 35: Deleting a MAC – Static-MAC-Entry Table**

## Port Mirroring

Port mirroring allows network traffic from one port to be copied or mirrored to another port. This is a very useful troubleshooting feature in that all data from one port is sent to another port which is attached to a computer or other network device that is configured to capture packets. This enables a network administrator or technician to see the traffic that is entering or leaving a particular port without disrupting normal network operations on the port that is being mirrored.

To navigate to the **Port Mirroring** menu:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Switching**.
2. Click on **Port Mirroring**.

To configure port mirroring for a port or ports on the EtherWAN Managed Switch (see [Figure 36](#)):

1. Select the port or ports that traffic is to be mirrored from under the **Mirror From** column.
2. Select the destination port under the **Mirror To** drop down box.
3. Select the type of traffic that should be mirrored from the **Mirror Mode** drop down box. The available options are:
  - a. TX – transmit only
  - b. RX – Receive Only
  - c. TX/RX – Transmit and Receive.
4. Click on the **Submit** button.

Port Mirror Setup

Mirror From	Mirror To	Mirror Mode
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> fe1		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> fe2		
<input type="checkbox"/> fe3		
<input type="checkbox"/> fe4		
<input type="checkbox"/> fe5		
<input type="checkbox"/> fe6	fe10 ▾	Tx/Rx ▾
<input type="checkbox"/> fe7		
<input type="checkbox"/> fe8		
<input type="checkbox"/> fe9		
<input type="checkbox"/> fe10		
<input type="checkbox"/> ge1		
<input type="checkbox"/> ge2		

**Figure 36: Port Mirroring**

To disable port mirroring for a port or ports on the EtherWAN Managed Switch (see [Figure 37](#)):

1. Under the **Current Settings** section, the current port mirroring configuration should be displayed.
2. Click on the **Delete** button.

**Current Settings**

Mirror From	Mirror To	Mirror Mode
fe1 fe2	fe10	both

**Figure 37: Disabling Port Mirroring**

## Link State Tracking

Link-state tracking binds the link state of multiple interfaces. Link-state tracking provides redundancy in the network when used with server network interface card (NIC) adapter teaming or bonding. When the server network adapters are configured in a primary or secondary relationship known as teaming and the link is lost on the primary interface, connectivity transparently changes to the secondary interface.

To navigate to the **Link State Tracking** menu:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Switching**.
2. Click on **Link State Tracking**.

### Enable/Disable Link State Tracking

To enable Link State Tracking for a particular group on the EtherWAN Managed Switch (see [Figure 38](#)):

1. Under **Group Setting**, click the check box of the Link State groups that are to be enabled (or disabled).
2. Click on **Update Setting**.

Link State Tracking Setting										
Group Setting										
	Group 1	Group 2	Group 3	Group 4	Group 5	Group 6	Group 7	Group 8	Group 9	Group 10
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Figure 38: Link State Tracking**

### Port Settings

To configure individual ports for a Link State group on the EtherWAN Managed Switch (see [Figure 39](#)):

1. Under **Port Setting**, select the Link State Group that the port will belong to from the Group drop down box

2. Select if the port is upstream or downstream from the Up/Down Stream)drop down box.
3. Click on **Update Setting**.

Port Setting			
Port	Group	(Up/Down)Stream	Status
fe1	1 ▾	Up ▾	
fe2	1 ▾	Up ▾	
fe3	▾	Up ▾	
fe4	▾	Up ▾	
fe5	▾	Up ▾	

**Figure 39: Link State Tracking – Port Settings**

## PoE - System and Port Settings

This section only applies to Managed EtherWAN Switches with support for PoE.

To navigate to the **PoE page**:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Switching**.
2. Click on **PoE**.

### PoE System Setting

The PoE Page provides access to **PoE System Setting** information and configuration. The information provided is (See [Figure 40](#)):

1. **Main Supply Voltage**
2. **System Temperature**
3. **Power Allocation** – Actual wattage supplied to attached PoE device(s)
4. **System Power Budget** – Configurable. The default value depends on the model of switch.

PoE System Setting	
Main Supply Voltage	47.00 (V)
System Temperature	41.74 (C)
Power Allocation	7.81 (W)
System Power Budget	<input type="text" value="144.11"/> (W)
The value of 'System Power Budget' should be greater than the sum of all port's 'Consumption'	
<input type="button" value="Submit"/>	

Figure 40: PoE System Setting

## PoE Port Setting

The PoE Port Setting section provides the following configurable settings and information:

5. **Enable Mode** – Set the PoE Enable Mode by selecting one of the following settings in the drop-down box under PoE Mode (see [Figure 41](#))
  - **Enable** – Enable PoE on a specific port
  - **Disable** – Disable PoE on a specific port
  - **Scheduling** – Schedule time of day that PoE will be enabled per port (see [PoE Scheduling](#))
6. **Power Limit by Classification** – This setting tells the switch to negotiate with the attached PoE device to determine the Watts that will be provided by the switch. To change this setting, check (enable) or uncheck (disable) the check box located in the *Power Limit by Classification* column. The default is checked (Enabled). This is a per port setting (see [Figure 41](#)).
7. **Fixed Power Limit** – Provides a fixed Wattage to the attached PoE (PD) device. This setting is only enabled after the *Power Limit by Classification* is disabled on a port and the Submit button is clicked.
8. **Power Priority** – Use the Drop-Down box in the *Power Priority* column to set the priority to High, Medium or Low.
9. **Power Down Alarm** – This setting only applies to EtherWAN Switches that have a relay. If this box is check, losing PoE power on a port triggers the relay on the switch.
10. **Status** – Informational only. Provides the status of the PoE port
11. **PD Class** - Informational only. Provides the PoE Classification of the PoE (PD) device attached to the PoE port
12. **Current (mA)** – Informational only. Shows the current draw from the attached PoE (PD) device.
13. **Consumption (W)** - Informational only. Shows the power consumption of the attached PoE (PD) device.

PoE Port Setting									
Port	Enable Mode	Power Limit by Classification	Fixed Power Limit (W)	Power Priority	Power Down Alarm	Status	PD Class	Current (mA)	Consumption (W)
fe1	Enable ▾	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.00	High ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	Delivering Power	PD Class 0	172.02	7.71
fe2	Enable ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	2.47	Medium ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	Delivering Power	PD Class 0	12.20	0.57
fe3	Enable ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.00	Low ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	Searching	N/A	0	0
fe4	Enable ▾	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.00	Low ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	Searching	N/A	0	0
fe5	Enable ▾	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.00	High ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	Searching	N/A	0	0
fe6	Disable ▾	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.00	High ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	Disable	N/A	0	0
fe7	Scheduling ▾	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.00	High ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	Disable	N/A	0	0
fe8	Scheduling ▾	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.00	High ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	Disable	N/A	0	0
<input type="button" value="Submit"/>									

**Figure 41: PoE Port Setting**

## PoE Scheduling

PoE Scheduling allows PoE ports to have their power up time scheduled by hour of the day and day of the week. In order for a port to follow a schedule defined here, the port must be set to **Scheduling** on the **PoE settings** page (see [PoE Port Setting](#))

To navigate to the **PoE Scheduling** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Switching**.
2. Click on **PoE Scheduling**.

Each PoE port on the switch can be schedule to power up and down automatically. To configure a port:

1. Select the port from the drop-down list (See [Figure 42](#))

PoE Per Port Scheduling			
Port:	fe1	Status: Not Scheduled	
	fe1	Sun	Mon
00	fe2		
01	fe3		
02	fe4		
03	fe5		
04	fe6		
05	fe7		
06	fe8		
07			
08			
09			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			
21			
22			
23			
24			
25			
26			
27			
28			
29			
30			
31			
32			
33			
34			
35			
36			
37			
38			
39			
40			
41			
42			
43			
44			
45			
46			
47			
48			
49			
50			
51			
52			
53			
54			
55			
56			
57			
58			
59			
60			
61			
62			
63			
64			
65			
66			
67			
68			
69			
70			
71			
72			
73			
74			
75			
76			
77			
78			
79			
80			
81			
82			
83			
84			
85			
86			
87			
88			
89			
90			
91			
92			
93			
94			
95			
96			
97			
98			
99			
100			

**Figure 42: Selecting a Port**

2. Select the hour(s) of day for each day of the week (see [Figure 43](#)).
3. Click on the **Submit** button.

Port: fe1 ▾		Status: Not Scheduled					
Time	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
00:00							
01:00							
02:00							
03:00							
04:00							
05:00							
06:00							
07:00							
08:00							
09:00							
10:00							
11:00							
12:00							
13:00							
14:00							
15:00							
16:00							
17:00							
18:00							
19:00							
20:00							
21:00							
22:00							
23:00							
	Select All	Select All	Select All	Select All	Select All	Select All	Select All
	Delete All	Delete All	Delete All	Delete All	Delete All	Delete All	Delete All

Click on the time of day to power your PoE device

Click "Select All" to select a full day

**Figure 43: PoE Power Scheduling**

# Switch Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

## Setting the Aging Time Value

To update the **Aging Time** value on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge 1 ageing-time** (time in ms)

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 ageing time 300
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling Port Isolation

To enable **Port Isolation** for a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **port-isolation enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#configure interface fe1
switch_a(config)#port-isolation enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling Block Multicast

To enable **Block Multicast** for a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **switchport block multicast**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#configure interface fe1
switch_a(config)#switchport block multicast
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting Storm Control

To set the value for the **Broadcast and or DLF-Multicast Storm Control** value of a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **stormcontrol <broadcast / dlf-multicast> <level>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#configure interface fe1
switch_a(config)#storm-control broadcast 20
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling Loopback Detect (Global)

To enable **Loopback Detect** on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: General Configuration Mode

CLI Command Syntax: `bridge 1 loopback-detect <enable | disable>`

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 loopback-detect enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting the Loopback Detect Action

To set the action for **Loopback Detect** on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: General Configuration Mode

CLI Command Syntax: `bridge 1 loopback-detect action <err-disable | none>`

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 loopback-detect action err-disable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting the Loopback Detect Recovery Time

To set the recovery time for **Loopback Detect** on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: `bridge 1 loopback-detect errdisable-recovery <0-65535>`

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 loopback-detect errdisable-recovery 30
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting the Loopback Detect Polling Interval

To set the polling interval for **Loopback Detect** on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge 1 loopback-detect interval <1-65535>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 loopback-detect interval 5
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling Loopback Detect (Port)

To enable **Loopback Detection** on a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **loopback-detect enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#interface fe1
switch_a(config)# loopback-detect enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Configuring Storm-Detect

To Enable or Disable Storm-Detect use the CLI command Below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**bridge 1 storm-detect errdisable**

**no bridge 1 storm-detect errdisable**

Default: **Disabled**

Usage Example – Enabling storm detect:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# bridge 1 storm-detect errdisable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example – Disabling storm detect:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# no bridge 1 storm-detect errdisable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the storm-detect interval use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge 1 storm-detect interval <2-65535>**

Default: **10**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# bridge 1 storm-detect interval 10
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the storm-detect recovery time use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge 1 storm-detect errdisable-recovery <0-65535>**

Default: **0** No errdisable recovery.

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# bridge 1 storm-detect errdisable-recovery 60
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Storm Detect Packet Type

Enable this port's storm detect by detect number of broadcast or broadcast plus multicast packets per second. Unit is packets per second. Set to 0 to disable this feature.

To set the storm-detect packet type use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **storm-detect (bc | mc-bc) pps <0-100000>**

**bc** = broadcast only

**mc-bc** = count broadcast & multicast packets together.

Default: **0** (Disabled)

Usage Example 1 – Enabling Multicast + Broadcast:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#storm-detect mc-bc pps 50000
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Usage Example 2 – Enabling Multicast + Broadcast:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#storm-detect bc pps 50000
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the storm-detect utilization use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **storm-detect utilization <0-100>**

Default: **0** (Disabled)

## Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#storm-detect utilization 80
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To disable storm-detect on a port use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **no storm-detect port enable**

## Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#no storm-detect port enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To disable storm-detect on a port use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **no storm-detect port enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fel
switch_a(config-if)#no storm-detect port enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Adding a MAC Address for Static-MAC-Entry Forwarding

To add a MAC address for **Static-MAC-Entry Forwarding** for a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**bridge 1 address <mac address> forward <interface> vlan <vlan id>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# bridge 1 address 00e0.abcd.1245 forward fe1 vlan 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Adding a MAC Address for Static-MAC-Entry Discarding

To add a MAC address for **Static-MAC-Entry Discarding** for a port on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge 1 address <mac address> discard vlan <vlan id>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# bridge 1 address 00e0.abcd.1245 discard vlan 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Configuring Port Mirroring

To configure a port for Port Mirroring on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **mirror interface <interface> direction <both / tx / rx>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#interface ge1
switch_a(config)# mirror interface fe1 direction both
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling a Link State Tracking Group

To enable a **Link State Tracking** Group on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **link state track <group #>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# link state track 4
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Assigning a Port to a Link State Tracking Group

To assign a port to a Link State Tracking group on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **link state group <group #> <upstream / downstream>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# link state group 4 downstream
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting PoE Power Budget

To set the PoE Power Budget use the following CLI commands

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **poe system-power-budget <value>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# poe system-power-budget 144.14
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## PoE Port Settings

The following commands are use to set PoE functions related directly to individual PoE ports:

CLI Command (click link for syntax)	Function
<a href="#">enable</a>	Enables PoE on a port
<a href="#">fixed-power-limit</a>	Sets a fixed wattage for a PoE port
<a href="#">power-classification</a>	Sets a port to negotiate power-classification
<a href="#">power-down-alarm</a>	Turns on alarm by relay on PoE power down
<a href="#">power-priority</a>	Sets priority of power distribution to ports
<a href="#">scheduling</a>	Enable Scheduling
<a href="#">schedule-time</a>	Sets schedule time to power PoE ports
<a href="#">schedule-time-hour</a>	Schedule time (hour)

### enable

To enable or disable PoE on a port use the following CLI commands

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**poe enable**

**no poe enable**

Usage Example 1 – Enabling PoE on a port:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# poe enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2 – Disabling PoE on a port:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# no poe enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## fixed-power-limit

The fixed-power-limit CLI command sets the maximum wattage that a switch port will provide to the attached PoE device. To set a fixed power limit on a port **Power Limit by Classification** must be disabled on the port first (see [power-classification](#)). To set the fixed-power-limit, use the following CLI command:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **poe fixed-power-limit <level>**

Level = 0-15.4 (802.3af) / 30 (802.3at) / 60 (W)

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)# poe fixed-power-limit 7.5
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## power-classification

This setting tells the switch to negotiate with the attached PoE device to determine the Watts that will be provided by the switch. To change this setting, check (enable) or uncheck (disable) the check box located in the *Power Limit by Classification* column. The default is checked (Enabled). This is a per port setting.

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**poe power-classification enable**

**no poe power-classification enable**

Usage Example 1 – Enabling PoE Power Classification on a port:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)# poe power-classification enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2 – Disabling PoE Power Classification on a port:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# no poe power-classification enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

### **power-down-alarm**

This setting only applies to EtherWAN Switches that have a relay. If this setting is enabled, losing PoE power on a port triggers the relay on the switch.

To enable or disable the power down alarm, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**poe power-down-alarm enable**

**no poe power-down-alarm enable**

Usage Example 1 – Enabling PoE power down alarm on a port:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# poe power-down-alarm enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2 – Disabling PoE power down alarm on a port:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# no poe power-down-alarm enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## power-priority

Use this setting to set the priority to High, Medium or Low.  
To set the PoE power priority, use the following CLI command:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **poe power-priority <high | medium | low>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)# poe power-priority medium
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## PoE Scheduling

PoE Scheduling allows PoE ports to have their power up time scheduled by hour of the day and day of the week.

### scheduling

To enable PoE Power Scheduling on a port, use the following CLI command:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **poe scheduling enable**

To disable PoE scheduling on a port use the *no poe* [enable](#) command

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)# poe scheduling enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## schedule-time

To enable PoE Power Scheduling on a port, use the following CLI command:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **poe schedule-time <day> <hour(s)>**

Day = 0 (Sunday) to 6 (Saturday)

Hour = 1 to 23. Multiple hours can be defined using a dash (ex. 1-23)

To disable PoE scheduling on a port use the *no poe* [enable](#) command

### Usage Example 1:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# poe schedule-time 0 10
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

### Usage Example 2 – Multiple hours:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# poe schedule-time 0 10-14
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## schedule-time-hour

To enable PoE Power Scheduling on a port, use the following CLI command:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **poe schedule-time <day> <hour>**

Day = 0 (Sunday) to 6 (Saturday)

Hour = 1 to 23

To disable PoE scheduling on a port use the *no poe* [enable](#) command.

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)# poe schedule-time 0 10
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# TRUNKING

## Overview

Port Trunking refers to the use of multiple network connections in parallel to increase the link speed beyond the limits of any one single cable or port. This is commonly called link aggregation. These aggregated links may be used to interconnect switches or to connect high-capacity servers to a network.

The EtherWAN EtherWAN Managed Switch supports up to six trunks for 100Mbps ports and up to two gigabit trunks. Each 100Mbps trunk can be composed of up to eight 100Mbps ports while each gigabit trunk can support up to four gigabit ports.

There are two popular types of port trunking, static and link aggregation control protocol (LACP). We will take a minute to discuss both types of trunking and why one would want to use them.

### Static Channel Trunking

Originally specified in the IEEE802.3AD specification and now in the IEEE 802.1AX2008 specification, this type of trunking is the most basic and easiest to understand. It simply is the aggregation of two or more Ethernet links to form a virtual link equivalent in bandwidth to the sum of its individual links. For example, if one had four 100Mbps Ethernet links composing a single static channel, the overall bandwidth of the static channel would be 400Mbps.

Prioritization of data through the channel is simple as well. When one of the links of the channel becomes saturated the excess data spills over into the remaining channels. For example, if one were sending a constant stream of data at 250Mbps through a static channel composed of 4 individual 100Mbps links, the first two links of the channel would be completely saturated while the half of the third channel would be utilized and none of the fourth channel would be used.

### Link Aggregation Control Protocol

Within the IEEE specification, the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) provides a method to control the bundling of several physical ports together to form a single logical channel. LACP allows a network device to negotiate an automatic bundling of links by sending LACP packets to the peer (directly connected device that also implements LACP). This means that both sides of the LACP channel must be configured for LACP which implies both devices must support it.

LACP also has a couple of very important advantages over static channel:

- Failover when a link fails and there is (for example) a media converter between the devices which means that the peer will not see the link down. With static link aggregation the peer would continue sending traffic down the link causing it to be lost.
- The device can confirm that the configuration at the other end can handle link aggregation. With Static link aggregation a cabling or configuration mistake could go undetected and cause undesirable network behavior.

## Port Trunking

To navigate to the **Port Trunking** menu:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Trunking**.
2. Click on **Port Trunking**.

There are 2 versions of Port Trunking supported depending on the model of EtherWAN Manage switch.

### Version 1 (see [Figure 44](#))

To create a trunk consisting of 100Mbps ports:

1. Click on the checkbox for each desired port in the **Static Channel Group** or the **LACP Group**. A port cannot be in the Static Channel Group and the LACP Group at the same time
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

To create a static trunk consisting of 1000Mbps ports:

1. In the **GE Trunking** section, select **Static** or **LACP**.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

Static Channel Group										
	fe1	fe2	fe3	fe4	fe5	fe6	fe7	fe8	fe9	fe10
Trunk 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LACP Group										
	fe1	fe2	fe3	fe4	fe5	fe6	fe7	fe8	fe9	fe10
Trunk 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
GE Trunking										
Trunk 3	<input type="radio"/> Static <input type="radio"/> LACP <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		<input type="button" value="Submit"/>							

Note: 4 ports maximum per trunk

**Figure 44: Port Trunking – Version 1**

**Version 2** (see [Figure 45](#))

To create a static trunk consisting of 100Mbps ports:

3. Click on the checkbox for each desired port in a particular trunk.
4. Click on the **Submit** button.

To create a static trunk consisting of 1000Mbps ports (see [Figure 45](#)):

3. In the **GE Trunking** section, click on the checkbox for each desired port in a particular trunk.
4. Click on the **Submit** button.

Static Channel Group																								
	port 1	port 2	port 3	port 4	port 5	port 6	port 7	port 8	port 9	port 10	port 11	port 12	port 13	port 14	port 15	port 16	port 17	port 18	port 19	port 20	port 21	port 22	port 23	port 24
Trunk 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Trunk 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Trunk 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Trunk 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Trunk 5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Trunk 6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Note: 8 ports maximum per trunk																							<input type="button" value="Submit"/>	
GE Trunking																								
	port 1	port 2	port 3	port 4																				
Trunk 7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																				
Trunk 8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																				
Note: 4 ports maximum per trunk				<input type="button" value="Submit"/>																				

Figure 45: Port Trunking – Version 2

# LACP Trunking

To navigate to the **LACP Trunking** menu:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Trunking**.
2. Click on **LACP Trunking**.

There are 2 versions of Port Trunking supported depending on the model of EtherWAN Manage switch.

**Version 1** (see [Figure 46](#))

To create a LACP trunk:

1. In the **Trunk Configuration** section, select a port in the LACP trunk.
2. Select **LACP** from the Trunk Type dropdown box for this port.
3. Enter an admin key for this port in the **Admin Key** textbox. 100Mbps ports admin keys must be **1** and 1Gbps ports must be **3**.
4. Select the LACP Mode to either **Active** or **Passive**.
5. Enter a value in the **Port Priority** textbox.
6. Select a Timeout value of **Short** or **Long**.
7. Click on the **Submit** button.
8. Repeat steps 1-7 for each additional port that is to be used in the trunk.

To set the LACP System Priority

1. Enter a value between 1 and 65535. The default value is 32768.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

Port Status :

Port	Trunk Type	Admin Key	LACP Mode	LACP Port Priority	LACP Timeout	LACP Sync	LACP Sync Port
fe1	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
fe2	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
fe3	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
fe4	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
fe5	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
fe6	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
fe7	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
fe8	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
fe9	LACP	1	Active	None	Long	Not sync	NA
fe10	LACP	1	Active	None	Long	Not sync	NA
ge1	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
ge2	None	None	None	None	None	None	None

Trunk Configuration :

Port	Trunk Type	Admin Key (FE ports:1) (GE ports:3)	LACP Mode	LACP Port Priority (Set 0 for None)	LACP Timeout
fe9 ▾	LACP ▾	<input type="text" value="1"/>	Active ▾	<input type="text"/>	Long ▾

Note: 4 ports maximum per trunk

LACP System Priority  
(1-65535, default:32768)

Figure 46: LACP Trunking Version 1

**Version 2** (see [Figure 47](#))

To create a LACP trunk:

1. In the **Trunk Configuration** section, select a port in the LACP trunk.
2. Select **LACP** from the Trunk Type dropdown box for this port.
3. Enter an admin key for this port in the **Admin Key** textbox. 100Mbps ports admin keys must be between 1-6 and 1Gbps ports must be between 7-8.
4. Select the LACP Mode to either **Active** or **Passive**.
5. Enter a value in the **Port Priority** textbox.
6. Select a Timeout value of **Short** or **Long**.
7. Click on the **Submit** button.
8. Repeat steps 1-7 for each additional port that is to be used in the trunk.

Port Status :

Port	Trunk Type	Admin Key	LACP Mode	LACP Port Priority	LACP Timeout	LACP Sync	LACP Sync Port
1	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
2	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
3	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
4	Static	2	None	None	None	None	None
5	Static	2	None	None	None	None	None
6	Static	2	None	None	None	None	None
7	Static	3	None	None	None	None	None
8	Static	3	None	None	None	None	None
9	Static	3	None	None	None	None	None
10	Static	4	None	None	None	None	None
11	Static	4	None	None	None	None	None
12	Static	4	None	None	None	None	None
13	Static	5	None	None	None	None	None
14	Static	5	None	None	None	None	None
15	Static	5	None	None	None	None	None
16	Static	5	None	None	None	None	None
17	Static	5	None	None	None	None	None
18	Static	5	None	None	None	None	None
19	Static	6	None	None	None	None	None
20	Static	6	None	None	None	None	None
21	Static	6	None	None	None	None	None
22	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
23	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
24	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
25	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
26	LACP	7	active	1	long	Not Sync	NA
27	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
28	LACP	7	active	1	long	Not Sync	NA

Trunk Configuration :

Port	Trunk Type	Admin Key (FE ports:1-6) (GE ports:7-8)	LACP Mode	LACP Port Priority (Set 0 for None)	LACP Timeout
28	LACP	7	Active	1	Long

Note: 8 ports maximum per trunk

Figure 47: LACP Trunking – Version 2

# Trunking Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

## Adding an Interface to a Static Trunk

To add an interface to a static trunk on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**static-channel-group <static channel>** (1-6 for 100Mbps, 7-8 for 1Gbps ports)

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config)#static-channel-group 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Adding an Interface to a LACP Trunk

To add an interface to a LACP trunk on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**channel-group <LACP Channel> mode <active / passive>**

(LACP Channel is 1-6 for 100Mbps, 7-8 for 1Gbps ports)

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config)# channel-group 2 mode passive
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting the LACP Port Priority

To set the port priority for an interface attached to a LACP trunk on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lacp port-priority <1 - 65535>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config)# lacp port-priority 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting the LACP Timeout

To set the timeout for an interface attached to a LACP trunk on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lacp timeout <long / short>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config)# lacp timeout long
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# STP/RING PAGE – OVERVIEW

## Choosing the Spanning Tree Protocols

The Spanning Tree algorithm works by designating a single switch (The Root Bridge) in the network, as the root or the parent to all the switches. All the switches in the network will use the same algorithm to form unique paths all the way back to the Root Bridge. Some switches establish a blocking point (a port on a switch) somewhere along the path to prevent a loop. There are 3 versions of the Spanning Tree protocol, STP, RSTP, MSTP, and they are all backwards compatible with each other.

### Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

This is the original Spanning Tree protocol, and it has been supersede by both the RSTP and MSTP protocol. It is based on a network with a maximum diameter of no more than 17 switches. It uses timers to synchronize any changes in the network topology, and this could take minutes. It is not recommended that you use this version of the Spanning Tree protocol.

### Rapid Spanning Tree protocol (RSTP)

The RSTP protocol is the new enhanced version of the original STP protocol. It uses an enhanced negotiation mechanism to directly synchronize any topology changes between switches; it no longer uses timers as in the original STP protocol, which results in a faster re-convergence time. The maximum allowed network diameter for the RSTP protocol is 40 switches.

### Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)

The MSTP protocol extends the RSTP protocol by simultaneously running multiple instances of the Spanning Tree Protocol and mapping different VLANs to each instance, thus providing load balance across multiple switches. The MSTP protocol accomplishes this by creating new extended sections within the RSTP protocol, called Regions. Each region runs its own instance of the Spanning Tree Protocol. Within each Region, the MSTP protocol can accommodate a network diameter of up to 40 switches. There can be a maximum of 40 Regions in a single MSTP network.



**Note:** If a faster recovery time is required, EtherWAN's proprietary  $\alpha$ -Ring provides a recovery time of <15MS with up to 250 switches. See [STP/Ring Page - Alpha Ring](#) on page [162](#) for more information.

# STP/RING PAGE - CONFIGURING RSTP

## Global Configuration Page

To navigate to the **STP/Ring Global Configuration** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **Global Configuration**.

### Enabling the RSTP Protocol

RSTP is enabled by Default. If RSTP has been disabled and you wish to enable it (see [Figure 48](#)):

1. Click the dropdown box next to **Spanning Tree Protocol** and choose **Enable**.
2. Click on the dropdown box next to **STP Version** and select **RSTP**.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

### Additional Global Configuration page settings

- **Bridge Priority** – Bridge Priority is used to set the Root and backup Root Bridge. For more details see [The Root Bridge & Backup Root Bridge](#).
  - Default is 32768. Range is 0 to 61440.
- **Hello Time** – This tells how often a BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Unit) is sent (see [Bridge Protocol Data Units](#)). Default is 2 seconds. Range is 1 to 10 seconds.
- **Max Age** – Default is 20. Hop count limit for BPDU packets (see [Setting the MAX Age, Forward Delay and Hello Timer](#)),
- **Forward Delay** - Default is 15 sec.



**Note: Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs)** are frames that contain information about the Spanning tree protocol (STP). Switches send BPDUs using a unique MAC address from its origin port and a multicast address as destination MAC (01:80:C2:00:00:00). There are three kinds of BPDUs:

- Configuration BPDU, used by Spanning Tree Protocol to provide information to all switches.
- TCN (Topology change), tells about changes in the topology.
- TCA (Topology change Acknowledgment), confirm the reception of the TCN.

The screenshot displays the configuration page for STP/Ring on a Managed Switch. The left sidebar shows a navigation tree with 'STP/Ring' expanded to 'Global Configuration'. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'Status' and 'Setting'.

Status	
Bridge ID	800000e0b33307bc
Designated Root	800000e0b33307bc
Reg Root ID	
Root Port	0
Root Path Cost	0
Current Max Age (sec)	20
Current Hello Time (sec)	2
Current Forward Delay (sec)	15
Topology Change Count	382
Time Since Last Topology Change	Sun Jan 3 15:59:35 2010


  

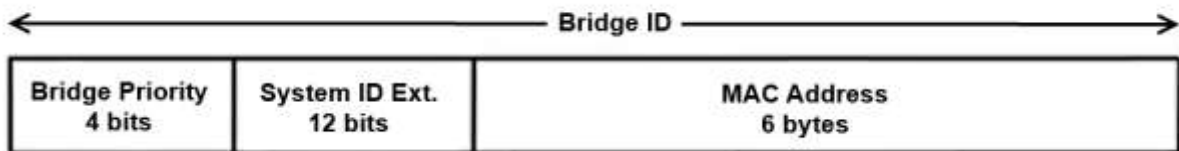
Setting	
Spanning Tree Protocol	Enable <input type="button" value="v"/>
Bridge Priority (0..61440)	<input type="text" value="32768"/>
Hello Time (1..10 sec)	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Max Age (6..40 sec)	<input type="text" value="20"/>
Forward Delay (4..30 sec)	<input type="text" value="15"/>
STP Version	RSTP <input type="button" value="v"/>

**Figure 48: STP/Ring Global Configuration**

## The Root Bridge & Backup Root Bridge

To configure the Spanning Tree protocol on your network, you will need to setup a Root Bridge and Backup Root Bridge. In order to configure a switch to be the Root Bridge of a Spanning Tree network, you have to make sure that the Bridge Priority (which is the most significant 4 bits of the Bridge ID) of the switch is the lowest among any of the switches on the network. Similarly for the Backup Root Bridge, it must have the next lowest Bridge Priority of all the switches.

 **Note:** Since the **Bridge Priority** is the most significant 4 bit of the Bridge ID, the lowest **Bridge Priority** will always be the Root Bridge and the second lowest **Bridge Priority** will be the Backup Root Bridge. If all switches have the same **Bridge Priority**, then The 12 bit System ID or MAC Address (if the system ID's are the same) will be used to determine the Root and Backup Root Bridge (See [below](#)).



**Figure 49: Bridge ID**

Bridge ID is a concatenation of 3 values: a 4 bit Bridge Priority (most significant), a 12 bit System ID (less significant), and the 48 bit MAC address of the local switch (least significant).


### Setting the Root Bridge and Backup Root Bridge

To navigate to the **STP/Ring Global Configuration** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **Global Configuration**.

To set the Bridge Priority:

1. Enter the **Bridge Priority ID** in the text box to the right of **Bridge Priority (0..61440)**
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

 **Note:** The valid values for this parameter are from 0 to 61440, in increments of 4096; you will see this value reflected in the first hexadecimal digit of the **Bridge ID** field after you click the **Update Setting** button (See [Figure 50](#)). Set this value to be less than any other switch on the network, in order to make this switch the Root Switch. To set a **Backup Root Bridge** set the **Bridge ID** to be between the **Root Bridge** and the rest of the network switches.

The screenshot displays the configuration page for a Management Switch in the EtherWAN interface. The left sidebar shows a tree view of configuration categories, with 'STP/Ring' expanded to show various settings. The main content area is divided into 'Status' and 'Setting' sections. The 'Status' section contains a table with the following data:

Status	
Bridge ID	800000e0b33307bc
Designated Root	800000e0b33307bc
Reg Root ID	
Root Port	0
Root Path Cost	0
Current Max Age (sec)	20
Current Hello Time (sec)	2
Current Forward Delay (sec)	15
Topology Change Count	382
Time Since Last Topology Change	Sun Jan 3 15:59:35 2010

The 'Setting' section contains a table with the following data:

Setting	
Spanning Tree Protocol	Enable <input type="button" value="v"/>
Bridge Priority (0..61440)	<input type="text" value="4096"/>
Hello Time (1..10 sec)	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Max Age (6..40 sec)	<input type="text" value="20"/>
Forward Delay (4..30 sec)	<input type="text" value="15"/>
STP Version	RSTP <input type="button" value="v"/>

An 'Update Setting' button is located at the bottom right of the settings table. The 'Bridge ID' and 'Designated Root' rows in the status table are highlighted with a red border.

**Figure 50: Bridge ID Display**

## Setting the MAX Age, Forward Delay and Hello Timer

To navigate to the **STP/Ring Global Configuration** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **Global Configuration**.

### The Network Diameter

The Diameter of a network depends on the type of topology your network uses. In a ring topology, the Network Diameter is the total number of switches in a network minus the Root Bridge. In a star topology, the Network Diameter is the maximum number of hops to get from Root Bridge to the switch that is the most hops away. In the RSTP protocol, the **Max Age** parameter is used as a hop count limit on how far the Spanning Tree protocol packet can propagate throughout the network topology, therefore, it must be configured with a value that is greater than the network diameter.

### Relationship between Max Age, Forward Delay and Hello Time

The following rules must be followed when setting the **Max Age**, **Forward Delay** and **Hello Timer**:

- $\text{Max Age} \geq 2 \times (\text{Hello Time} + 1.0 \text{ second})$
- $2 \times (\text{Forward Delay} - 1.0 \text{ second}) \geq \text{Max Age}$

To change the **Max Age**, **Forward Delay** and **Hello Timer** (see [Figure 51](#)):

1. Enter the **Max Age** in the text box to the right of Max Age (6..40 sec) label.
2. Enter the **Hello Time** in the text box to the right of the Hello Time (1..10 sec) label.
3. Enter the **Forward Delay** in the text box to the right of the Forward Delay (4..30 sec) label.
4. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
5. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

The screenshot displays the configuration page for a Management Switch. On the left is a navigation tree with categories like System, Diagnostics, Port, Switching, Trunking, and STP/Ring. The STP/Ring section is expanded to show various configuration options. The main content area is a table divided into 'Status' and 'Setting' sections. The 'Setting' section contains several parameters, with 'Hello Time (1..10 sec)', 'Max Age (6..40 sec)', and 'Forward Delay (4..30 sec)' highlighted by a red rectangular box. The 'Update Setting' button is located at the bottom right of the table.

Status	
Bridge ID	800000e0b33307bc
Designated Root	800000e0b33307bc
Reg Root ID	
Root Port	0
Root Path Cost	0
Current Max Age (sec)	20
Current Hello Time (sec)	2
Current Forward Delay (sec)	15
Topology Change Count	382
Time Since Last Topology Change	Sun Jan 3 15:59:35 2010
Setting	
Spanning Tree Protocol	Enable <input type="button" value="v"/>
Bridge Priority (0..61440)	4096
Hello Time (1..10 sec)	2
Max Age (6..40 sec)	30
Forward Delay (4..30 sec)	16
STP Version	RSTP <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

**Figure 51: Max Age, Hello Timer & Forward Delay**

# RSTP Port Setting Page

To navigate to the **STP/Ring RSTP Port Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **RSTP Port Setting**.

## Spanning Tree Port Roles

In a stable RSTP topology, each port on a switch can function in any one of 4 different Spanning Tree port roles. These Spanning Tree port roles are (see [Figure 52](#)):

- Root Port
- Designated Port
- Alternate Port
- Backup Port

Port ID	Role	Priority	Cost	Mode	Configuration
14	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
15	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
16	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
17	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
18	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
19	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
20	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
21	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
22	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
23	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
24	Disabled(Discarding)	128	200000	Shared	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
25	Rootport(Forwarding)	128	200000	Point to Point	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
26	Designated(Forwarding)	128	20000	Point to Point	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
27	Backup(Discarding)	128	20000	Point to Point	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off
28	Alternate(Discarding)	128	200000	Point to Point	Conf. Auto / Curr. Edge off

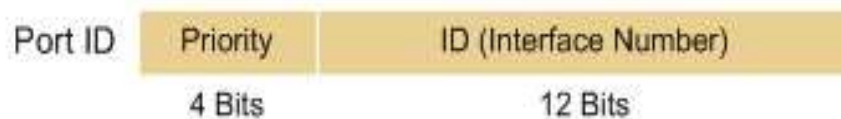
**Figure 52: Spanning Tree Port Roles**

## Path Cost & Port Priority

By default, each port on a Spanning Tree switch will be assigned a **Path Cost** based on the port's transmission speed according to the IEEE standard below:

Link speed	Recommended value
Less than or equal 100Kb/s	200,000,000
1 Mb/s	20,000,000
10 Mb/s	2,000,000
100 Mb/s	200,000
1 Gb/s	20,000
10 Gb/s	2,000
100 Gb/s	200
1 Tb/s	20
10 Tb/s	2

By default each port on a Spanning Tree switch will be assigned a Port Priority of 128, according to the IEEE standard. This Port Priority is part of the Port ID, which is a concatenation of 2 values: Port Priority (4 bits) + Interface ID (12 bits) (see [below](#))



**Figure 53: Port ID**

Port Priority is part of the Port ID, which is a concatenation of 2 values: Port Priority (4 bits) + Interface ID (12 bits).

The default values will work fine in most scenarios; however, there are times when you may need to adjust these values manually in order to influence the location of the Alternate Port, the Root Port or the Backup Port.

To adjust the Port Priority value or the Path Cost value on a port:

1. Choose the correct port from the drop down list under **Port** (see [below](#))
2. Enter the proper value under the **Priority (Granularity 16)**
  - a. The Port Priority range is between 0 and 240 in multiples of 16.
3. Enter the proper value under the **Admin. Path Cost** text entry box.
  - a. The Path Cost range is between 1 and 200,000,000.
4. Click on the **Update Setting** button
5. Save your configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#)).

The screenshot shows the configuration page for RSTP Port Setting. A table lists 12 ports, all with a status of 'Disabled(Discarding)'. Below the table is the 'RSTP Port Configuration' form, which is highlighted with a red border. The form contains the following fields:

Port	Priority(Granularity 16)	Admin. Path Cost	Point to Point Link	Edge Port
1	128	200000	Enable	Auto

An 'Update Setting' button is located at the bottom right of the configuration form.

**Figure 54: Port Priority and Path Cost**

## Point to Point Link

By default, RSTP will assume any full-duplex link as a **Point to Point Link**, but if the switch detects that the neighbor switch is not running the RSTP protocol, it will assume the port to be a **Shared Port**. You can force a port to be a **Shared Port**, if you know in advance that there will be more than one switch connecting to this link (through an unmanaged switch, for example), or if you know in advance that the other switch on this link will be running the older STP protocol.

To manually force a port to be a **Shared Port** or a **Point to Point Link**:

1. Choose the correct port from the drop down list under **Port**, and choose **Enable** or **Disable** under **Point to Point Link** (see [Figure 54](#)).
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

## Edge Port

By enabling the **Edge Port** feature on a port, the switch will stop reacting to any linkup event on this port, and will not send out any Topology Change notification to the neighbor bridges.

1. Choose the correct port from the drop down list under **Port**, and choose **Enable** or **Disable** under **Edge Port** (see Figure 54).
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

# RSTP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

## Enabling the Spanning Tree Protocol

To enable the Spanning Tree function on a switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**no bridge shutdown 1**

**bridge 1 protocol rstp vlan-bridge**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no bridge shutdown 1
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 protocol rstp vlan-bridge
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Bridge Priority, Max Age, Forward Delay, and Hello Time

To configure the Bridge Priority, Max Age, Forward Delay, and Hello Time of a Spanning Tree Bridge, please use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**bridge 1 priority <0-61440>**

**bridge 1 max-age <6-40>**

**bridge 1 forward-time <4-30>**

**bridge 1 hello-time <1-10>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 priority 4096
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 max-age 20
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 forward-time 15
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 hello-time 2
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Modifying the Port Priority and Path Cost

To modify the Port Priority and Path Cost on a switch, use the below CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**bridge-group 1 path-cost <1-200000000>**

**bridge-group 1 priority <0-240>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fel
switch_a(config-if)#bridge-group 1 path-cost 200000
switch_a(config-if)#bridge-group 1 priority 128
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Manually Setting a Port to be a Shared or Point to Point Link

To manually force a port to be a **shared** link or **Point-to-point** link, use the below CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**spanning-tree link-type point-to-point**

**spanning-tree link-type shared**

Usage Example 1: Setting port 1 to be point-to-point:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fel
switch_a(config-if)#spanning-tree link-type point-to-point
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Setting port 1 to be shared:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fel
switch_a(config-if)#spanning-tree link-type shared
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling/Disabling a port to be an Edge Port

To manually enable or disable a port to be an **Edge Port**, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**spanning-tree spanning-tree edgeport**  
**no spanning-tree spanning-tree edgeport**

Usage Example 1: Enabling edge port on port 1:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#spanning-tree edgeport
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example 2: Disabling edge port on port 1:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#no spanning-tree edgeport
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# STP/RING PAGE - CONFIGURING MSTP

The MSTP protocol adds a new concept called a **Region** to the Spanning Tree algorithm. Unlike RSTP and STP, inside each MSTP Region, there can be more than one instance of Spanning Tree Protocol running simultaneously. The MSTP protocol can then map multiple VLANs to each instance of Spanning Tree protocol to provide load balancing among the switches. Between Regions, the MSTP runs a single instance of Spanning Tree similar to, and is backward compatible with, the RSTP protocol.

## Global Configuration Page

### Enabling the MSTP Protocol

Navigate to the **STP/Ring Global Configuration** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **Global Configuration**.
3. Verify that the Spanning Tree Protocol is enabled (see [Figure 55](#)), if not, choose **Enabled** from the **Spanning Tree Protocol** drop down list.
4. Choose **MSTP** in the **STP Version** drop down list.
5. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
6. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#)).

The screenshot displays the configuration page for the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) on a Management Switch. The interface is divided into a left-hand navigation pane and a main configuration area. The navigation pane shows a tree structure with 'STP/Ring' expanded to show various configuration options. The main area contains a table with two sections: 'Status' and 'Setting'.

Status	
Bridge ID	800000e0b33307bc
Designated Root	0000000cdb163aa0
Reg Root ID	800000e0b33307bc
Root Port	28
Root Path Cost	200000
Current Max Age (sec)	20
Current Hello Time (sec)	2
Current Forward Delay (sec)	15
Topology Change Count	1
Time Since Last Topology Change	Sat Jan 16 18:20:52 2010
Setting	
Spanning Tree Protocol	Enable
Bridge Priority (0..61440)	32768
Hello Time (1..10 sec)	2
Max Age (6..40 sec)	20
Forward Delay (4..30 sec)	15
STP Version	MSTP
Update Setting	

**Figure 55: Enabling MSTP**

## The CIST Root Bridge & Backup CIST Root Bridge

In order to configure a switch to be the CIST Root Bridge of a Spanning Tree network, you just have to make sure that the Bridge Priority (which is the most significant 4 bits of the Bridge ID) of the switch is the lowest among any of the switches on the network. Similarly for the Backup CIST Root Bridge, it must have the next lowest Bridge Priority of all the switches. This Bridge ID is a concatenation of 3 values: a 4 bit Bridge Priority (most significant), a 12 bit System ID (less significant), and the 48 bit MAC address of the local switch (least significant) (see [below](#)).

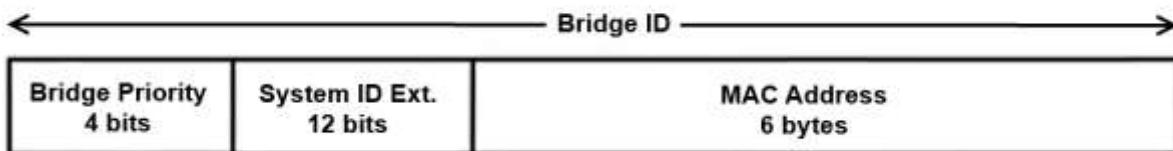


Figure 56: Bridge ID

### Setting Bridge Priority

To set the Bridge Priority:

1. Enter the **Bridge Priority ID** in the text box to the right of **Bridge Priority (0..61440)**
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.



**Note:** The valid values for this parameter are from 0 to 61440, in increments of 4096; you will see this value reflected in the first hexadecimal digit of the **Bridge ID** field after you click the **Update Setting** button (See [Figure 57](#)). Set this value to be less than any other switch on the network, in order to make this switch the Root Switch. To set a **Backup Root Bridge** set the **Bridge ID** to be between the **Root Bridge** and the rest of the network switches.

The screenshot displays the configuration page for a Management Switch in the EtherWAN environment. The interface is divided into a left-hand navigation tree and a main configuration area. The navigation tree includes folders for System, Diagnostics, Port, Switching, Trunking, and STP/Ring. Under STP/Ring, there are links for Global Configuration, RSTP Port Setting, MSTP Properties, MSTP Instance Setting, MSTP Port Setting, u-Ring Setting, and Advanced Setting. The main area is split into two sections: 'Status' and 'Setting'.

The 'Status' section contains the following data:

Status	
Bridge ID	800000e0b33307bc
Designated Root	0000000cdb163aa0
Reg Root ID	800000e0b33307bc
Root Port	28
Root Path Cost	200000
Current Max Age (sec)	20
Current Hello Time (sec)	2
Current Forward Delay (sec)	15
Topology Change Count	19
Time Since Last Topology Change	Thu Jan 7 21:52:45 2010

The 'Setting' section contains the following configuration options:

Setting	
Spanning Tree Protocol	Enable <input type="button" value="v"/>
Bridge Priority (0..61440)	<input type="text" value="32768"/>
Hello Time (1..10 sec)	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Max Age (6..40 sec)	<input type="text" value="20"/>
Forward Delay (4..30 sec)	<input type="text" value="15"/>
STP Version	MSTP <input type="button" value="v"/>

**Figure 57: Bridge ID Display**

## Configuring the CST Network Diameter

When using MSTP, the **Max Age** parameter is used for the CST (Common Spanning Tree) topology simply as a hop count limit on how far the Spanning Tree protocol packet can propagate throughout the CST topology, therefore, the Max Age must be configured with a value that is greater than the network diameter of the CST topology. The Max Age parameter will need to be configured correctly on both the CIST Root Bridge as well as on the Backup CIST Root Bridge (in the event when the CIST Root Bridge fails).

### Setting the MAX Age, Forward Delay and Hello Timer

Navigate to the **STP/Ring Global Configuration** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **Global Configuration**.

### Relationship between Max Age, Forward Delay and Hello Time

The following rules must be followed when setting the **Max Age**, **Forward Delay** and **Hello Timer**:

- $\text{Max Age} \geq 2 \times (\text{Hello Time} + 1.0 \text{ second})$
- $2 \times (\text{Forward Delay} - 1.0 \text{ second}) \geq \text{Max Age}$

To change the **Max Age**, **Forward Delay** and **Hello Timer** (see [Figure 58](#)):

1. Enter the **Max Age** in the text box to the right of Max Age (6..40 sec) label.
2. Enter the **Hello Time** in the text box to the right of the Hello Time (1..10 sec) label.
3. Enter the **Forward Delay** in the text box to the right of the Forward Delay (4..30 sec) label.
4. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
5. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

Status	
Bridge ID	100000e0b32103de
Designated Root	100000e0b32103de
Reg Root ID	100000e0b32103de
Root Port	0
Root Path Cost	0
Current Max Age (sec)	30
Current Hello Time (sec)	2
Current Forward Delay (sec)	16
Topology Change Count	1
Time Since Last Topology Change	Fri Jan 1 20:01:56 2010

Setting	
Spanning Tree Protocol	Enable ▾
Bridge Priority (0..61440)	4096
Hello Time (1..10 sec)	2
Max Age (6..40 sec)	30
Forward Delay (4..30 sec)	16
STP Version	MSTP ▾

Figure 58: Max Age, Hello Timer & Forward Delay

## MSTP Properties Page

### Configuring an MSTP Region

In order to form a MSTP Region, the switches that will be connected together to form the MSTP Region must have the same values for the configuration parameters listed below. Two of the parameters can be configured directly, the third parameter (Configuration Digest) will be automatically calculated by the switch based on the **VLAN to MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance)** mapping. The **VLAN to MSTI** instance mapping must be the same for all the switches within the same **MSTP Region** (see [MSTP Instance Setting Page](#)).

- Region name
- Revision level
- Configuration Digest

To navigate to the **STP/Ring MSTP Properties** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **MSTP Properties**.

To configure both the MSTP Regional Configuration Name and the Revision Level for each of the switches located in the same MSTP Region (see [below](#)):

1. Enter the **Region Name** of the Region that the switch will belong to in the **Region Name** text entry box,
2. Enter the **Revision Level** value for the corresponding Region in the **Revision Level** text entry box,
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
4. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

MSTP Properties	
Region Name	<input type="text" value="Region_1"/>
Revision Level	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Max Hops	<input type="text" value="20"/>
Digest	0x0A93D2F3DF9DA7495DB99A256750491A
CIST Root ID	100000e0b32103de
CIST Reg Root ID	100000e0b32103de
CIST Bridge ID	100000e0b32103de
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

**Figure 59: MSTP Region and Revision Level**

## Configuring the IST Network Diameter

To navigate to the **STP/Ring MSTP Properties** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **MSTP Properties**.

In the MSTP protocol, the **Max Hops** parameter is used for the **IST** (Internal Spanning Tree) and the **MSTI** (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) topology as a hop count limit on how far the Spanning Tree protocol packet can propagate inside of a MSTP Region, therefore, it must be configured with a value that is greater than the network diameter of the **IST/MSTI** topology. The **Max Hops** parameters should be configured correctly on the CIST Root and the Backup CIST Root switch and on all of the Boundary switches of a MSTP Region (if there are multiple Regions within your MSTP network).

Follow the steps below to configure the **Max Hops** parameter:

1. Enter the desired hop count in the text entry box next to **Max Hops**
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button (see [below](#)).
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

MSTP Properties	
Region Name	Region_1
Revision Level	0
Max Hops	30
Digest	0x0A93D2F3DF9DA7495DB99A256750491A
CIST Root ID	100000e0b32103de
CIST Reg Root ID	100000e0b32103de
CIST Bridge ID	100000e0b32103de
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

Figure 60: MSTP Properties – Max Hops

# MSTP Instance Setting Page

## Setting an MSTP Instance

Navigate to the **STP/Ring MSTP Instance Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **MSTP Instance Setting**.

To create the Spanning Tree instances to be run inside a MSTP Region and its VLAN mappings, follow the below steps.

1. Click on the **VLAN Instance Configuration** button (see [Figure 61](#)),
2. Choose the **VLAN** that you want to map to a MSTI instance from the **VLAN ID** drop down box (see [Figure 62](#)).
3. Enter the **Instance ID** that you want the VLAN to map to in the text entry box next to **Instance ID (1..15)**.
4. Click on the **Update Settings** button.
5. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))



**Note:** You can enter a new instance number here, which is how a new MSTI instance is created. You can use an existing MSTI instance if it has already been created on another switch.

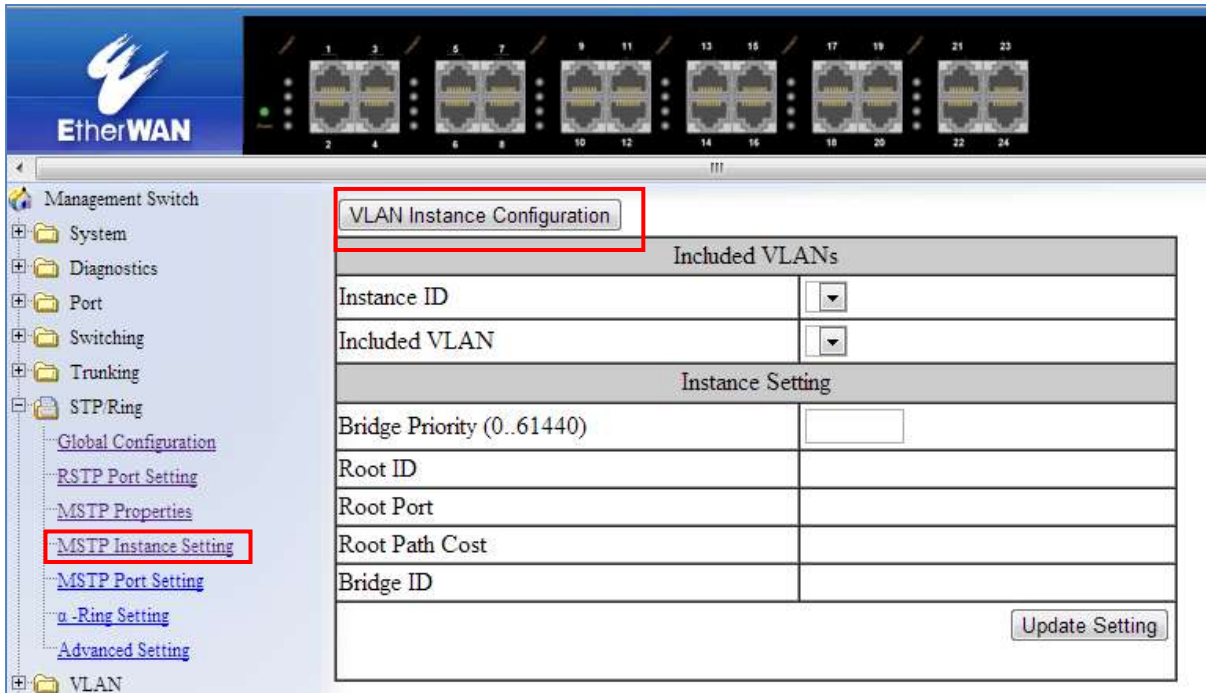


Figure 61: VLAN Instance Configuration

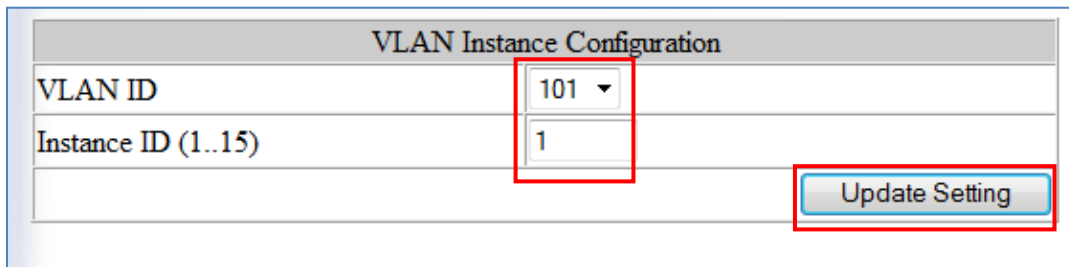


Figure 62: VLAN Instance ID

## Modifying MSTP parameters for load balancing

To navigate to the **STP/Ring MSTP Instance Setting** page:

1. Click on the + next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **MSTP Instance Setting**.

To load balance switches within a MSTP Region, set different switches within the MSTP Region to be the Root Bridge for different MSTI instances. A Root Bridge in a particular MSTI instance is called a MSTI Regional Root Bridge.

To designate a specific switch in a MSTP Region to be the Root Bridge in a specific MSTI instance, the bridge priority must be set to be the lowest number of all the switches in a particular MSTI instance.

To set the bridge priority on the switch for a specific MSTI Instance (see [Figure 63](#)):

1. Choose the particular instance in the **Instance ID** drop down list for which the switch will be a MSTI Regional Root Bridge;
2. Enter the desired value in the **Bridge Priority** text box
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button. The valid values for this parameter are from 0 to 61440, in increments of 4096.
4. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring a VLAN Instance. At the top is a button labeled "VLAN Instance Configuration". Below it is a table with two main sections: "Included VLANs" and "Instance Setting".

Included VLANs	
Instance ID	1 ▼
Included VLAN	▼

Instance Setting	
Bridge Priority (0..61440)	4096
Root ID	100100e0b32103e4
Root Port	0
Root Path Cost	0
Bridge ID	100100e0b32103e4

At the bottom right of the "Instance Setting" section is a button labeled "Update Setting". A red rectangular box highlights the "Instance ID", "Included VLAN", and "Bridge Priority" rows in the table.

**Figure 63: Setting the MSTI Regional Root Bridge**

## MSTP Port Setting page

### Adjusting the blocking port in a MSTP network

To navigate to the **STP/Ring MSTP Port Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **MSTP Port Setting**.

You can adjust the location of the blocking port in a MSTP network by modifying the **Port Priority** and the **Path Cost** of the ports on the switch. Modifying the **Port Priority** adjusts the blocking port between two switches. Modify the **Port Cost** adjusts the location of the blocking port in a MSTP loop.

To modify the Port Priority and the Path Cost of the ports on a MSTP switch for the MSTI instance only, please follow the below steps:

1. Choose the correct MSTI Spanning Tree instance from the drop down list under **Instance ID** (see [Figure 64](#)).
2. Choose the correct port number from the drop down list under **Port**, and enter the proper value under the **Priority** and the **Admin. Path Cost** text box,
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button (see [Figure 64](#)).
4. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

Port Instance Configuration

Instance ID

Port	Port State	Role	Priority	Path Cost	Designated Bridge ID	Designated Port ID	Designated Root ID	Designated Path Cost
1	Forwarding	Designated	128	200000	100100e0b32143b4	8001	100100e0b32143b4	0
2	Discarding	Disabled	112	100000	0000000000000000	0	0000000000000000	0
3	Discarding	Disabled	128	200000	0000000000000000	0	0000000000000000	0
4	Discarding	Disabled	128	200000	0000000000000000	0	0000000000000000	0
5	Discarding	Disabled	128	200000	0000000000000000	0	0000000000000000	0
6	Discarding	Disabled	128	200000	0000000000000000	0	0000000000000000	0
7	Discarding	Disabled	128	200000	0000000000000000	0	0000000000000000	0
8	Discarding	Disabled	128	200000	0000000000000000	0	0000000000000000	0

MSTP Port Configuration

Port	Priority(Granularity 16)	Admin. Path Cost
<input type="text" value="2"/>	<input type="text" value="112"/>	<input type="text" value="100000"/>

Figure 64: Port Cost & Priority

## MSTI Instance Port Membership

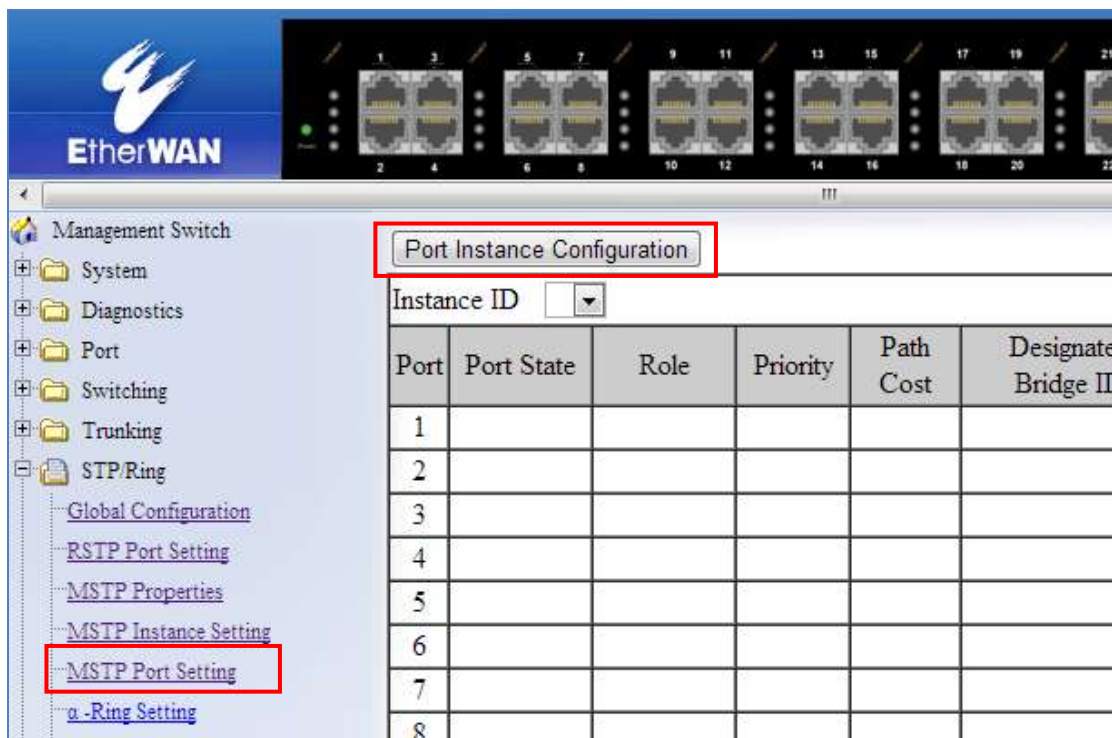
To navigate to the **STP/Ring MSTP Port Settings** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **MSTP Port Setting**.

If changes have been made to the port membership of a VLAN, you must also reconfigure the MSTI port membership for the MSTI instance that the VLAN maps to.

To reconfigure the MSTI instance port membership:

1. Click on the **Port Instance Configuration** button (see [Figure 65](#))
2. Choose the correct MSTI instance from the drop down list next to **Instance ID** (see [Figure 66](#)).
3. Check the box next to all the ports that should be part of this instance
4. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
5. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))



**Figure 65: Port Instance Configuration**

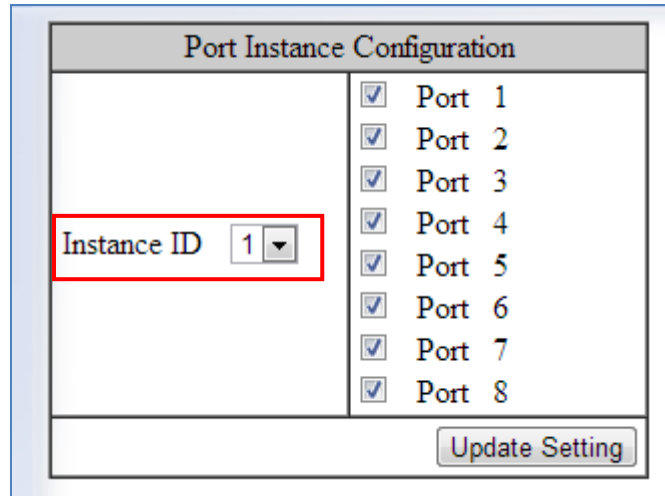


Figure 66: Port Instance - Adding Ports

## MSTP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

### Enabling Spanning Tree for MSTP

To enable the Spanning Tree function on a switch use the below CLI commands.:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**no bridge shutdown 1**

**bridge 1 protocol mstp**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no bridge shutdown 1
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 protocol mstp
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Bridge Priority, Max Age, Forward Delay, and Hello Time

To configure the CIST Bridge Priority, Max Age, Forward Delay, and Hello Time of a Spanning Tree Bridge, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**bridge 1 priority <0-61440>**

**bridge 1 max-age <6-40>**

**bridge 1 forward-time <4-30>**

**bridge 1 hello-time <1-10>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 priority 4096
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 max-age 20
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 forward-time 15
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 hello-time 2
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## IST MAX Hops

To configure the IST Max Hops parameter on a switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge 1 max-hops <1-40>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 max-hops 20
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## MSTP Regional Configuration Name and the Revision Level

To configure both the MSTP Regional Configuration Name and the Revision Level on a switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **MSTP Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**bridge 1 region <region\_name>**

**bridge 1 revision <revision\_number>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#spanning-tree mst configuration
switch_a(config-mst)#bridge 1 region R1
switch_a(config-mst)#bridge 1 revision 0
switch_a(config-mst)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Creating an MSTI Instance

To create a MSTI instance and map it to a VLAN, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **MSTP Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge 1 instance <1-15> vlan <vlan\_ID>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#spanning-tree mst configuration
switch_a(config-mst)#bridge 1 instance 1 vlan 10
switch_a(config-mst)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Setting MSTI Priority

To set the MSTI priority of a switch in a MSTP Region, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge 1 instance <1-15> priority <0-61440>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 instance 1 priority 0
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Modifying CIST Port Priority and Port Path Cost

To modify the CIST Port Priority and CIST Port Path Cost on a switch, use the below CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode (port)**

CLI Command Syntax:

**bridge-group 1 path-cost <1-200000000>;**  
**bridge-group 1 priority <0-240>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fel
switch_a(config-if)#bridge-group 1 path-cost 200000
switch_a(config-if)#bridge-group 1 priority 128
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To modify the MSTI Port Priority and MSTI Port Path Cost for an Instance on a switch, please use the below CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**bridge-group 1 instance <1-15> path-cost <1-200000000>**

**bridge-group 1 instance <1-15> priority <0-240>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# bridge-group 1 instance 1 path-cost 20000
switch_a(config-if)# bridge-group 1 instance 1 priority 128
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

### **Adding a Port to an MSTI Instance**

To add a port to a MSTI instance (this port must be a member port of the VLAN that is mapped to the MSTI instance), please use the below CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge-group 1 instance <1-15>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fel
switch_a(config-if)#bridge-group 1 instance 1
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# STP/RING PAGE - ALPHA RING

## Alpha Ring Setting Page

To navigate to the **STP/Ring  $\alpha$ -Ring Settings** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on  **$\alpha$ -Ring Setting**.

### EtherWAN $\alpha$ -Ring Technology

The  $\alpha$ -Ring protocol was designed and developed by EtherWAN to overcome traditional STP and RSTP's inability to provide fast network recovery and minimize packet loss caused by link failure. Among the advantages of  $\alpha$ -Ring are:

- **High-speed Recovery** – Less than 15 milliseconds
- **Flexibility for Network Deployment** – Coexistence with STP, RSTP and MSTP
- **Ring Coupling** – Smaller rings coupled together to increase network efficiency

### Implementing a Simple $\alpha$ -Ring

1. Change the **Ring State** to **Enabled**
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

Next, the ports that will be used to connect this switch to the  $\alpha$ -Ring need to be assigned to provide the connection redundancy (see [Figure 67](#)).

1. Change **Ring Port 1** to the port you will be using for the first redundant connection
2. Change **Ring Port 2** to the port you will be using for the second redundant connection.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
4. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

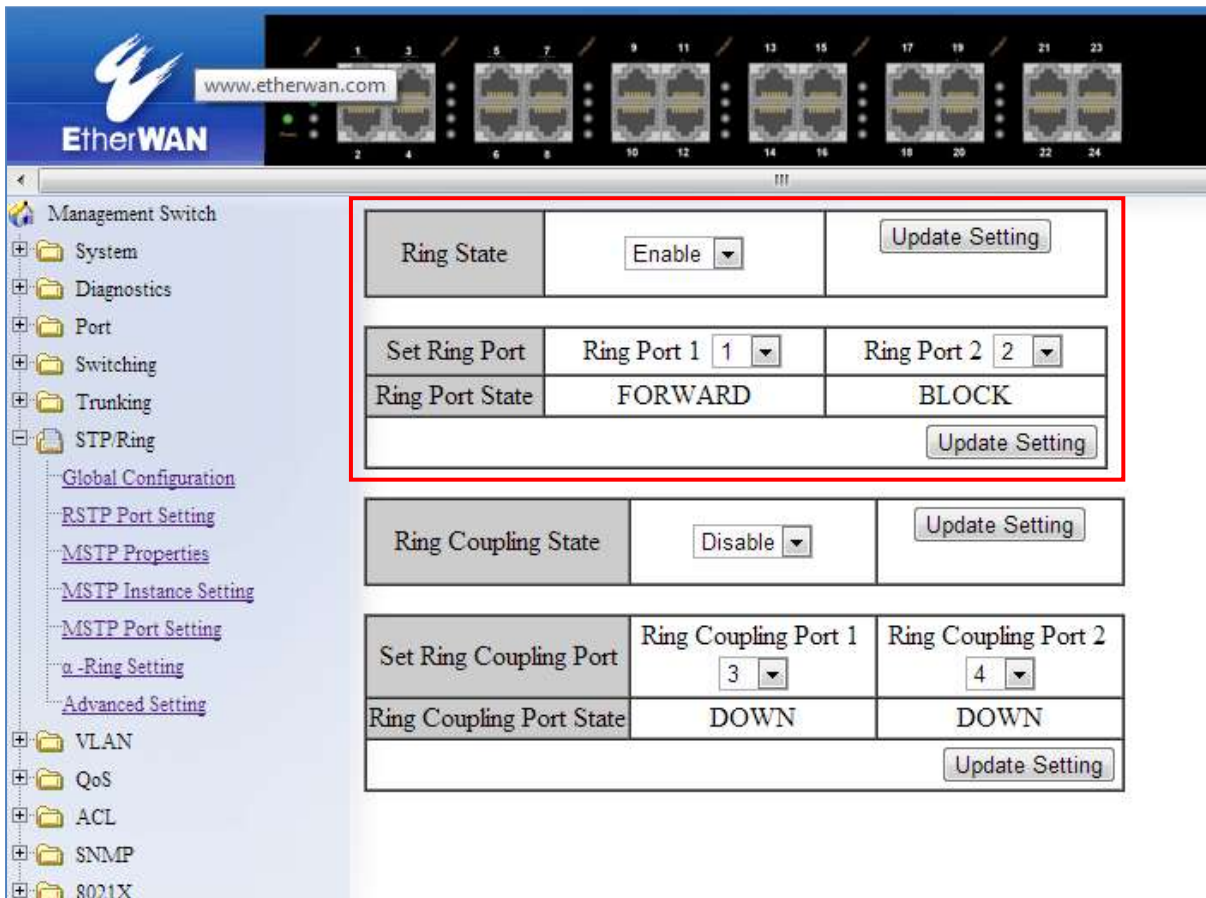


Figure 67: α-Ring Settings

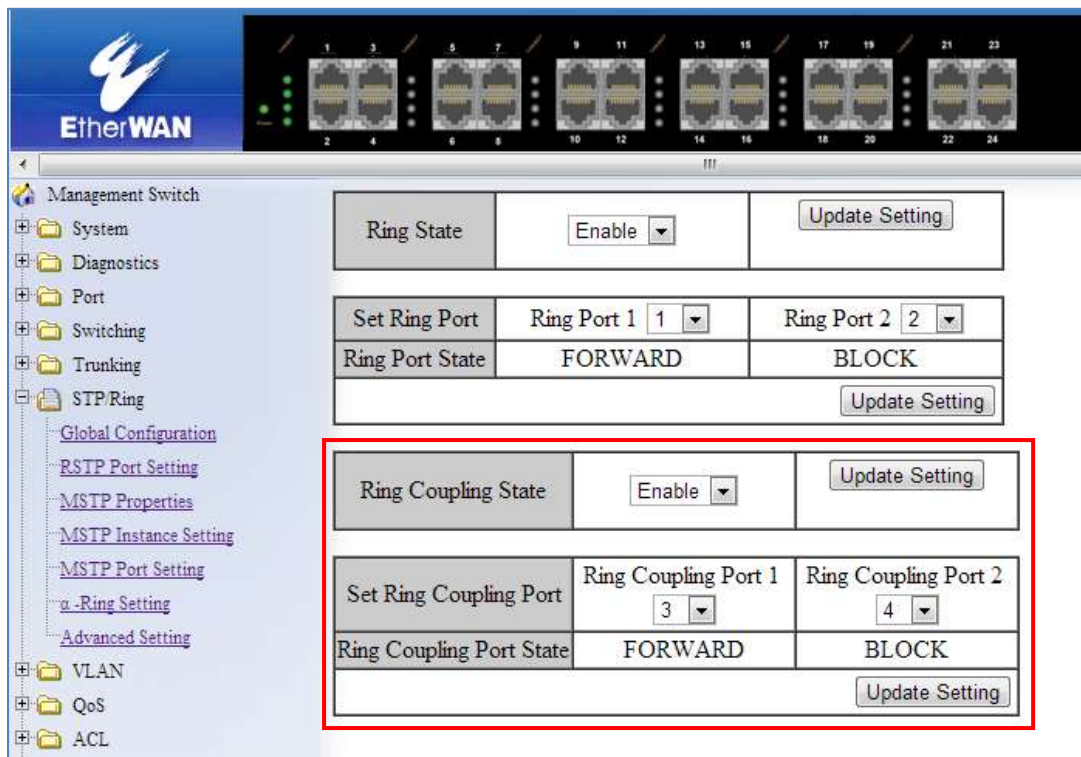
## Connecting two $\alpha$ -Ring Networks together

To navigate to the **STP/Ring  $\alpha$ -Ring Settings** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on  **$\alpha$ -Ring Setting**.

As additional switches are added to a network, it may become necessary to connect multiple  $\alpha$ -Ring networks together. This is called **Ring-coupling** and uses two additional Ethernet ports on the switch. To setup Ring-coupling (see [Figure 68](#)):

1. Change the **Ring-coupling** state to **Enable**.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button next to the Ring-coupling state.
3. Choose the desired port from the dropdown list under **Ring Coupling Port 1**
4. Choose the desired port from the dropdown list under **Ring Coupling Port 2**
5. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
6. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))



**Figure 68: Ring Coupling**

# STP/RING PAGE – ALPHA CHAIN

## The Alpha Chain Protocol

Although the Spanning Tree Protocols are very versatile in forming all possible redundant topologies, its re-convergence time is too slow for most mission critical applications. The EtherWAN Alpha Ring protocols can be used in mission critical applications to recover from a link failure in 15 milliseconds or less. However, with the Alpha Ring protocols (Alpha Ring, Alpha Ring-Coupling), the redundant topologies that these protocols can be applied to will be limited to at the most two Rings per switch. Alpha Chain protocol can be used independently, or in conjunction with the Alpha Ring protocols, to form almost limitless redundant topologies, all with the recovering time from a link failure in less than a second. With the Alpha Chain protocol, a redundant network segment can be created anywhere that a single path of daisy-chained switches exists.

## General Overview

To insure that the Alpha Chain protocol will function properly on your network, please follow the minimum configuration guidelines listed below for the two types of Alpha Chain switches (Chain Port switch, Chain-pass-through switch).

There are two types of port configurations used in the Alpha Chain setup. The flexibility of Alpha Chain allows for many different types of topologies to be created.

- **Alpha Chain Port** – Alpha Chain Ports make up the Beginning and End of an Alpha Chain. Each Alpha Chain segment contains a Master and a Slave port. The Master and Slave ports can be on one switch or they can be on two different switches.
- **Chain Pass-Through Port** – Every port that is part of the chain that **is not** a Master or Slave **Alpha Chain** port must be configured as a Chain Pass-Through port.

## Alpha Chain Settings

To navigate to the **STP/Ring  $\alpha$ -Chain Settings** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on  **$\alpha$ -Chain Setting**.

### Global Settings

To configure Alpha Chain use the instructions below:

1. **VLAN (91-4096, default: 1)** - In the text entry, enter the VLAN number of a VLAN that is supported on all the switches in the Alpha Chain segment (see Figure 69: Alpha Chain Setting [Figure 69](#)).
2. **Priority (0-255, default:128)** - The Chain Port switch(es) at the ends of an Alpha Chain segment will automatically determined which Chain Port switch should be forwarding and which should be blocking. However, if you should have a preference as to which Chain Port switch should be forwarding on the Alpha Chain segment, then you can enter a priority number in the range of **0-255**, in the text entry box, to control if the local switch will be forwarding or blocking.
  - a. Enter a number that is lower than the partner Chain Port switch's Priority setting, if you want the local switch to be the forwarding Chain Port switch.
  - b. Enter a number that is higher than the partner Chain Port switch's Priority setting, if you want the partner Chain Port switch to be the forwarding switch.
3. **Timeout Count (3-255, default:5)** - Enter the number PDUs (protocol data units) that a Chain Port is allowed to miss into the text entry box.
  - a. The Alpha Chain protocol works by sending PDUs between two Chain Ports to determine the forwarding and blocking status of each the two Chain Ports at the end points of an Alpha Chain Segment. One PDU is sent every 200 milliseconds. You can configure the number PDUs that a Chain Port is allowed to miss, before the port determines a link failure has occurred.
4. **Storm Control (broadcast and multicast)** - Choose **Disable** or **Enable** from the dropdown list.
  - a. **Warning!** When this option is enabled, all the ports on the switch will have the Storm Control feature automatically enabled.
5. Click on the **Submit** button to load the changes into the running configuration.

Global Setting	
VLAN (1-4094, default:1)	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Priority (0-255, default:128)	<input type="text" value="128"/>
Timeout Count (3-255, default:5)	<input type="text" value="5"/>
Storm Control (broadcast and multicast)	<input type="text" value="Enable"/>
<input type="button" value="Submit"/>	

**Figure 69: Alpha Chain Setting**

### Configuring the Alpha Chain Ports

1. Check the check box next to the port number of the ports that you want to be configured as a Chain Port (see [Figure 70](#)).
2. Click on the **Submit** button to load the changes into the running configuration.

Chain Protocol			
Port	Enable	Role	State
fe1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	MASTER	FORWARD
fe2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SLAVE	BLOCK
fe3	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
fe4	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
fe5	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
fe6	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
fe7	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
fe8	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
fe9	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
fe10	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
ge1	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
ge2	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
			<input type="button" value="Submit"/>

**Figure 70: Chain Ports – Master and Slave on one Switch**

Chain Protocol			
Port	Enable	Role	State
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	MASTER	FORWARD
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	None	None
			<input type="button" value="Submit"/>

**Figure 71: Chain Ports – Master Chain Port**

## Alpha Chain Pass-Through Ports

To navigate to the **Chain Pass-Through Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **Chain Pass-Through Setting**.

To configure the Alpha Chain Pass-Through ports:

1. From the drop-down list below the **Chain Pass-Through Port 1** heading, choose one of the daisy chained ports on the switch to be the Chain Pass-Through Port #1 for the switch.
2. Next, from the drop-down list below the **Chain Pass-Through Port 2** heading choose the remaining daisy chained port on the switch to be the Chain Pass-Through Port #2 for the switch.
3. To change the port number for either of the Chain pass-through ports on the switch, you must first click on the **Disable** button to clear the settings for both Chain Pass-Through ports. Repeat the previous steps to set the new port numbers to be Chain Pass-Through.
4. Click on the **Submit** button to load the changes into the running configuration.

Set Chain Pass-Through Port	Chain Pass-Through Port 1 fe5 ▼	Chain Pass-Through Port 2 fe6 ▼
Chain Pass-Through Port State	FORWARD	FORWARD
<input type="button" value="Disable"/> <input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>		

## Configuring Alpha Chain using CLI commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

### Storm Control

To disable the automatic enabling of Storm Control feature on all the ports, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **no bridge 1 chain-storm**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# no bridge 1 chain-storm
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

### Configuring Chain Ports

To configure the Chain Ports on a Chain Port Switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**chain port enable**

**no chain port**

Usage Example 1: Enabling a chain port

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#in fe6
switch_a(config-if)#chain port enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
```

### Usage Example 2: Disabling a chain port

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#in fe6
switch_a(config-if)#no chain port
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
```

## Configuring Chain Pass-Through Ports

To configure the Chain Pass-Through Ports on a Chain Pass-through Switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

```
chain pass-through <port #1 port #2>
no chain pass-through
```

### Usage Example 1: Enabling chain pass-through

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# chain pass-through fe3 fe4
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

### Usage Example 2: Disabling chain port pass-through

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# no chain pass-through
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# STP/RING PAGE - ADVANCED SETTING

To navigate to the **STP/Ring Advanced Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **STP/Ring**.
2. Click on **Advanced Setting**.

## Advanced Bridge Configuration

The Advanced Setting Page contain several settings to determine how the switch will handle BPDU packets.

- **Bridge bpduguard configuration** - When the BPDU Guard feature is set for a bridge, all portfast-enabled ports of the bridge that have **bpduguard** set to default shut down the port on receiving a BPDU. In this case, the BPDU is not processed.
- **Error disable timeout configuration** – Enabling this allows a Disabled port to re-enable itself automatically after the specified Interval.
- **Interval** – Default is 300 seconds. This is the length of time a port will remain disabled after shutting down due to the **bpduguard**.

Advanced Bridge Configuration		
Bridge BPDU-guard configuration	Disable ▼	
Error disable timeout configuration	Disable ▼	
Interval (10..1000000 sec), Default: 300	300	
Advanced Per Port Configuration		
Port	Portfast configuration / status	BPDU-guard configuration
fe1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼

Figure 72: Advanced Bridge Configuration

## Advanced Per Port Configuration

- **Portfast Configuration / status** – Enabling this for Edge ports (ports connecting to an end device as opposed to another switch) protect the
- **BPDU-Guard Configuration** – When set to **Default** the port will default to the Advanced Bridge Configuration settings. **Enable** or **Disable** to override the Bridge BPDU-Guard

Advanced Bridge Configuration		
Bridge BPDU-guard configuration	Disable ▼	
Error disable timeout configuration	Disable ▼	
Interval (10..1000000 sec), Default: 300	300	
Advanced Per Port Configuration		
Port	Portfast configuration / status	BPDU-guard configuration
fe1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
fe10	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
ge1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
ge2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable / Curr. OFF	Default ▼
Note: Per port BPDU-guard configuration takes precedence over bridge configuration.		
		Submit

Figure 73: Advanced Per Port Configuration

# Configuring Spanning Tree Advanced Settings using CLI commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

## Enabling BPDU Guard Globally

To enable the BPDU Guard feature **globally** on the switch use the below CLI commands (for more information on CLI command usage and typographic conventions please click [here](#)):

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **bridge 1 spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# bridge 1 spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling BPDU Guard on a Port

To enable the BPDU Guard feature on a **individual** switch port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Switch-Port Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**spanning-tree portfast;**

**spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#spanning-tree portfast
switch_a(config-if)#spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard enable
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling BPDU Guard Error Disable-timeout

To enable the BPDU Guard Error Disable-timeout feature on a switch port, and set the timeout interval, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**bridge 1 spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable**  
**bridge 1 spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval 300**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable
switch_a(config)#bridge 1 spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval
300
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling the Loop Guard Feature

To enable the Loop Guard feature on a switch port, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Switch-Port Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **spanning-tree guard loop**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fel
switch_a(config-if)# spanning-tree guard loop
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# VLAN

## Port Based VLAN vs. Tagged Based VLAN

The EtherWAN Managed Switch can be configured to operate in one of two VLAN modes: Port based VLAN mode or Tagged based VLAN mode. In Port based VLAN mode, packets from different VLANs can only be segregated from one another while within a single switch, but not when the packets travel to other switches in the network. The VLAN association rule for all incoming packets in Port based VLAN mode is determined only by the VLAN ID that is associated with the port when a packet enters the switch.

In Tagged based VLAN mode, traffic from different VLANs can be segregated from one another even after it travels to another switch. This is done by “tagging” (inserting information inside a packet) a packet with the VLAN ID that the packet belongs to when the packet exits the switch. The VLAN association rule for incoming packets in Tag based VLAN mode can either be based on the VLAN ID that is assigned to the port (PVID) when a packet enters the switch (in the event when the packet does not contain a VLAN ID), or it can be determined from the packet itself (when the packet does contains a VLAN ID).

## Configuring VLANs in Port Based VLAN Mode

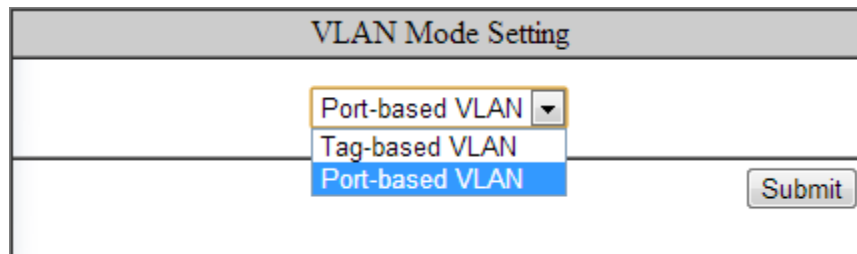
### Enabling Port Based VLAN

To navigate to the **VLAN Mode Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **VLAN**.
2. Click on **VLAN Mode Setting**.

To enable Port Based VLAN on the switch:

1. Select Port-based VLAN from the dropdown box (see [below](#))
2. Click on the **Submit** button.
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))



VLAN Mode Setting	
Port-based VLAN	▼
Tag-based VLAN	
Port-based VLAN	
	Submit

**Figure 74: Port Based VLAN**

## Port Based VLAN Configuration Examples

To navigate to the **Port Based VLAN** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **VLAN**.
2. Click on **Port Based VLAN**.

In Port Based VLAN mode, you can configure a port to be a member for a single VLAN or multiple VLANs. By default, all the ports on the switch are all members of a single VLAN (VLAN 1).

[below](#) is an example on how to configure two groups of ports, with each port being a member of a single VLAN. Since no ports are members of more than one VLAN, the ports in different groups cannot communicate with each other.

	VLAN 1	VLAN 2	VLAN 3	VLAN 4	VLAN 5
Port 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Port 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Port 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Port 4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Port 5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Port 6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Port 7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Port 8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Figure 75: Port Based VLAN – Example 1**

In the example [below](#), ports 1 through 6 are all on their own VLAN and cannot communicate with each other. Port 7 and 8 are members of all 6 VLANs and therefore can communicate with all ports that are in any of the VLANs that they share membership with.



**Figure 76: Port Based VLAN – Example 2**

To add or remove ports from a specific VLAN:

1. Select or deselect the checkbox to the right of the Port and below the VLAN ID for the port you want to add or remove from a VLAN.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

## Port Based VLAN Configuration Examples using CLI Commands

To configure port based VLANs use the following CLI commands (for more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#))

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **switchport portbase add vlan <1 – 16>**

Usage Example (to add a port to a single VLAN):

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#switchport portbase add vlan 1
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example (to add a port to multiple VLANs):

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#switchport portbase add vlan 1
switch_a(config-if)#switchport portbase add vlan 2
switch_a(config-if)#switchport portbase add vlan 3
switch_a(config-if)#switchport portbase add vlan 4
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# VLAN Configuration in 802.1Q Tag Based VLAN Mode

## General Overview

802.1Q VLAN configuration consists of the following four elements:

1. Creating all VLANs in the VLAN database.
2. Configuring an incoming untagged packet's VLAN association rule: this is accomplished by configuring the PVID setting on each individual port.
3. Configuring the ports that are associated with a VLAN to allow the packets that belong to that VLAN to exit and enter the switch through that port.
4. Configuring the tag action on the outgoing packets for each VLAN, that is to say, deciding on whether or not an outgoing packet will be tagged with the VLAN number that the packet belongs to.

All ports on the EtherWAN Managed Switch can be configured with different Port Types that have different tagging restrictions as defined below.

- **Access Port** - If a port is configured to be an Access Port, then this port can only be a member of a single VLAN based on the Access Port's **PVID VLAN** setting, and this port's outgoing packets cannot be modified to contain a VLAN Tag.
- **Trunk Port** - If a port is configured to be a Trunk Port, then this port can be a member of multiple VLANs. This port's outgoing packets will be automatically modified to contain a VLAN tag of the VLAN that the packet belongs to, with the exception of the PVID VLAN on that port. The PVID VLAN on a Trunk Port will not be automatically modified to contain a VLAN tag of the PVID VLAN.
- **Hybrid Port** - A Hybrid Port has no restriction on it. If a port is configured to be a Hybrid Port, then this port can be a member of multiple VLANs, and this port's outgoing packets can be configured to be either with or without a VLAN tag of the VLAN that the packet belongs to, including the PVID VLAN of the Hybrid Port.

For all three types of ports above, if an incoming packet contains a VLAN tag, then the packet's VLAN association rule will be based on the VLAN Tag.

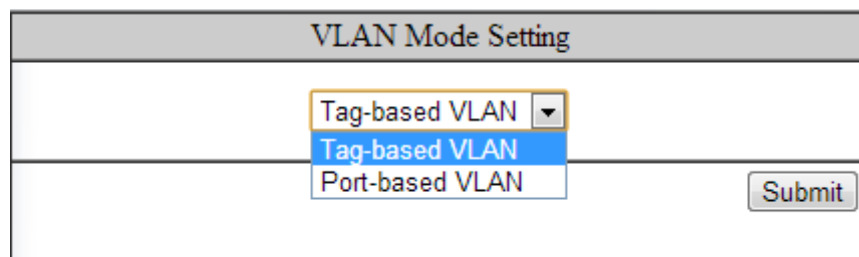
## Enabling 802.1Q Tagged Based VLAN

To navigate to the **VLAN Mode Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **VLAN**.
2. Click on **VLAN Mode Setting**.

To enable 802.1Q Tagged Based VLAN on the switch:

1. Select **Tag-based VLAN** from the dropdown box (see [below](#))
2. Click on the **Submit** button.
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "VLAN Mode Setting". It features a dropdown menu with three options: "Tag-based VLAN", "Tag-based VLAN", and "Port-based VLAN". The first "Tag-based VLAN" option is highlighted in blue. To the right of the dropdown menu is a "Submit" button.

**Figure 77: Tag-based VLAN**

## Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Database

To navigate to the **802.1Q VLAN Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **VLAN**.
2. Click on **802.1Q VLAN Setting**.

To configure the 802.1Q VLAN Database, please do the following:

1. Click on the **Add VLAN** button (see [Figure 78](#)).

VLAN Setting		Add VLAN	Delete VLAN
VLAN ID	VLAN NAME		
<a href="#">VLAN1</a>	default		

**Figure 78: Add VLAN**

2. Enter the **VLAN ID**.
3. Enter the **VLAN Name**.
4. Select **Attach** or **Detach** for the **CPU Port**.
  - a. Attaching the CPU to a VLAN is typically done on the Management VLAN.
5. Select the ports to be a member of the VLAN (see [Configuring the VLAN Egress \(outgoing\) Member Ports](#))
6. Click on **Submit** button.
7. Repeat for all the VLANs that are needed.
8. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

VLAN ID(2--4094)	<input type="text"/>	VLAN Name	<input type="text"/>
CPU Port	Attach ▼		
<b>VLAN Setting</b>			
PORT	VLAN Member	Tag or Untag	
fe1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Untag ▼	
fe2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Untag ▼	
fe3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Untag ▼	
fe4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Untag ▼	
fe5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Untag ▼	
fe6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Untag ▼	

**Figure 79: Add VLAN Page**

# 802.1Q Tag Based VLAN Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

## Configuring a 802.1Q VLAN

To configure a 802.1Q VLAN on a switch use the following CLI commands (for more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).)

CLI Command Mode: **VLAN Database Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **switchport portbase add vlan <1 – 16> vlan <1 – 4094> bridge 1 name VLAN NAME state enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#vlan database
switch_a(config-vlan)#vlan 100 bridge 1 name Management state enable
switch_a(config-vlan)#vlan 200 bridge 1 name Accounting state enable
switch_a(config-vlan)#vlan 300 bridge 1 name Sales state enable
switch_a(config-vlan)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Configuring an IP Address for a Management VLAN

To configure the IP address for the management VLAN use the following CLI commands

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **ip address IP\_ADDRESS/PREFIX [e.g. 10.0.0.1/24]**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.100
switch_a(config-if)#ip address 192.168.100.10/24
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Removing an IP Address from a Management VLAN

To removed an IP address from a management VLAN use the following CLI commands

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **no ip address**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.100
switch_a(config-if)#no ip address
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Configuring an Access Port

To configure an Access Port use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **switchport mode access**

CLI Command Syntax: **switchport access vlan <1 – 4094>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#switchport mode access
switch_a(config-if)#switchport access vlan 100
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Configuring a Trunk Port

To configure a Trunk Port use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **switchport mode trunk**

CLI Command Syntax: **switchport trunk allowed vlan add 100,200,300**

CLI Command Syntax: **switchport trunk native vlan 1**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe7
switch_a(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
switch_a(config-if)#switchport trunk allowed vlan add 100,200,300
switch_a(config-if)#switchport trunk native vlan 1
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Add an IP to the Management VLAN

To navigate to the **System/IP Address** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **System**.
2. Click on **IP Address**.

To add an IP for a Management VLAN:

1. Enter the **IP address** and **subnet mask** for the management VLAN
2. Click on the **Submit** button (see [below](#)).
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

VLAN ID	IP Address	IP Subnet Mask
1	<input type="text" value="10.58.7.78"/>	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>
100	<input type="text" value="192.168.100.12"/>	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>
Default Gateway	<input type="text" value="Disable"/> ▾	
<input type="button" value="Apply &amp; Save"/>		

**Figure 80: Management VLAN IP Address**

To delete an IP from a VLAN (the default VLAN, for an example):

1. Delete the IP and the subnet mask of the default VLAN and leave it as blank
2. Click on the **Submit** button.



**Warning:** Before completing the steps above, make sure that you have already set up another management IP on another VLAN, and have set up a port properly for accessing that VLAN.

## Configuring the Port Type and the PVID setting

To navigate to the **802.1Q Port Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **VLAN**.
2. Click on **802.1Q Port Setting**.

To configure the proper port type and the PVID setting for each switch port:

1. Choose the port type for each port in the drop-down list (see [General Overview](#) for port type details).
2. Enter the **PVID VLAN** for each port (see below).
3. Enter the **Priority Level** (optional).
4. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
5. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))



**Warning:** Modifying the Port Type using the Web GUI will cause that switch port to lose all its current VLAN membership and become a member port for the PVID VLAN only. You will lose your current connection to the switch, should you choose to modify the PVID of the port that connects your Computer to the switch.

Port	Mode	PVID	Priority Level
1	Access	100	0
2	Access	200	0
3	Access	200	0
4	Access	200	0
5	Access	300	0
6	Access	300	0
7	Access	300	0
25	Trunk	1	0
26	Trunk	1	0
27	Trunk	1	0
28	Trunk	1	0

Figure 81: VLAN Port Setting

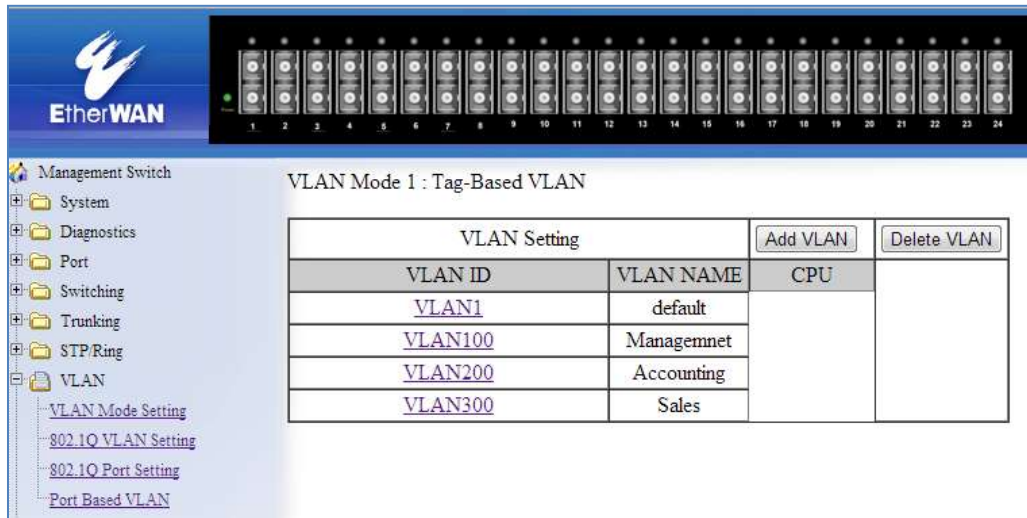
## Configuring the VLAN Egress (outgoing) Member Ports

To navigate to the **802.1Q VLAN Setting** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **VLAN**.
2. Click on **802.1Q VLAN Setting**.

To configure the egress member ports for each VLAN:

1. Click on the VLAN link that you want to configure (see [below](#)).

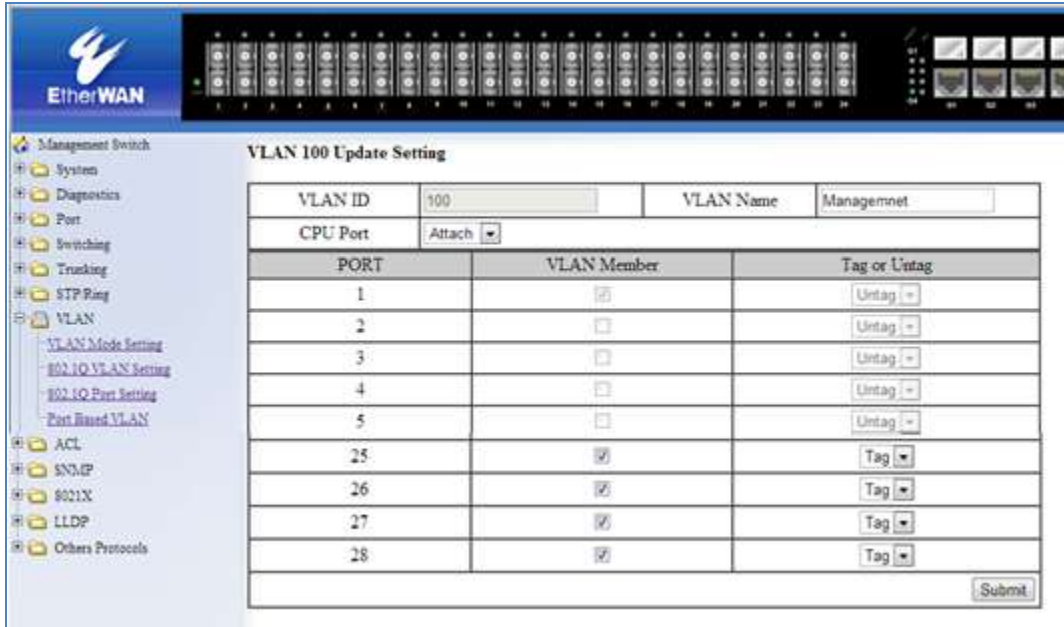


**Figure 82: VLAN Links**

2. Check the check box next to the port number that should be the egress member port for this VLAN
3. Click on the **Submit** button (see [Figure 83](#)).



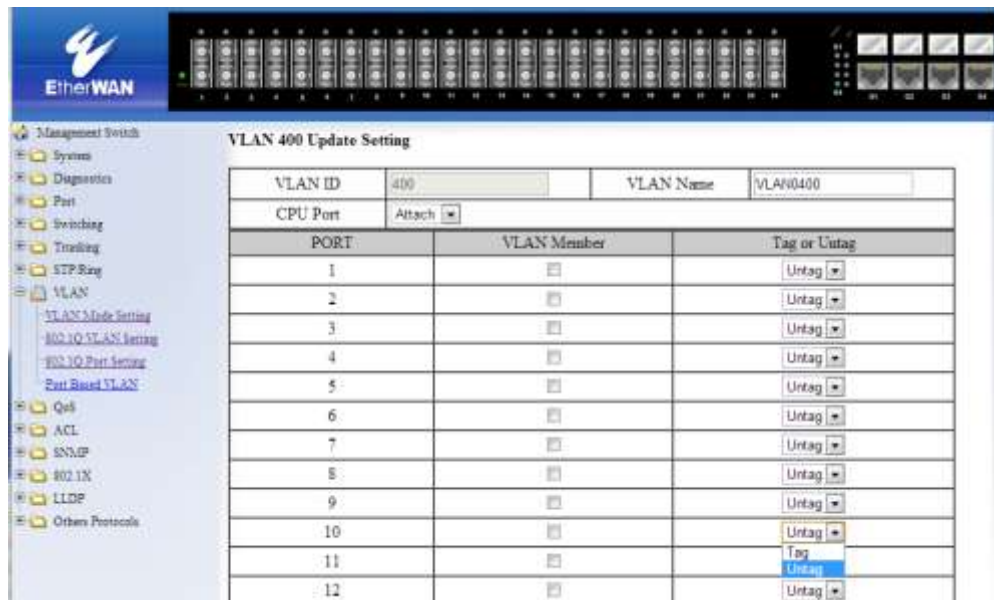
**Note:** If an egress member port for a VLAN has the PVID set on that port to be the same as the VLAN, then that port will automatically be configured as an egress member port for the VLAN by the switch. If a check box is not checked and is grayed out, it is because that port is an Access Port with the PVID set to be a different VLAN than the current VLAN.



**Figure 83: VLAN Ports**

If any of the egress member ports are Hybrid ports, you must also configure the Tag action on this port (see [Figure 84](#)).

4. Select the correct **Tag** option in the drop down list under **Tag or Untag** for this port.
5. Click on the **Submit** button.



**Figure 84: Tag or Untag ports**

# QoS

QoS (Quality of Service) refers to several related aspects of computer networks that allow the transport of traffic with special requirements. In particular, technology has been developed to allow computer networks to become as useful as telephone networks for audio conversations, as well as supporting new applications with even stricter service demands. Beyond the audio applications that QoS was originally intended, data traffic such as video or real-time information can benefit from QoS.

QoS as it pertains to the EtherWAN Managed Switch can be broken down into two types, CoS and DCSP. CoS or **Class of Service** operates at Layer 2 and was developed by an IEEE working group in the 1990s. CoS uses a 3-bit field called the **Priority Code Point** (PCP) within an Ethernet frame header when using VLAN tagged frames as defined by IEEE 802.1Q. It specifies a priority value between 0 and 7, inclusive that can be used by QoS disciplines to differentiate traffic. Although this technique is commonly referred to as IEEE 802.1p, there is no standard or amendment by that name published by the IEEE. Rather the technique is incorporated into the IEEE 802.1Q standard which specifies the tag inserted into an Ethernet frame.

Eight different classes of service are available as expressed through the 3-bit PCP field in an IEEE 802.1Q header added to the frame. The way traffic is treated when assigned to any particular class is undefined and left to the implementation. The IEEE however has made some broad recommendations:

PCP	Priority	Acronym	Traffic Types
1	0 (lowest)	BK	Background
1	1	BE	Best Effort
2	2	EE	Excellent Effort
3	3	CA	Critical Applications
4	4	VI	Video, < 100 ms latency and jitter
5	5	VO	Voice, < 10 ms latency and jitter
6	6	IC	Internetwork Control
7	7 (highest)	NC	Network Control

The above recommendations are implemented in the V1.94.2 EtherWAN Managed Switch's 802.1p submenu.

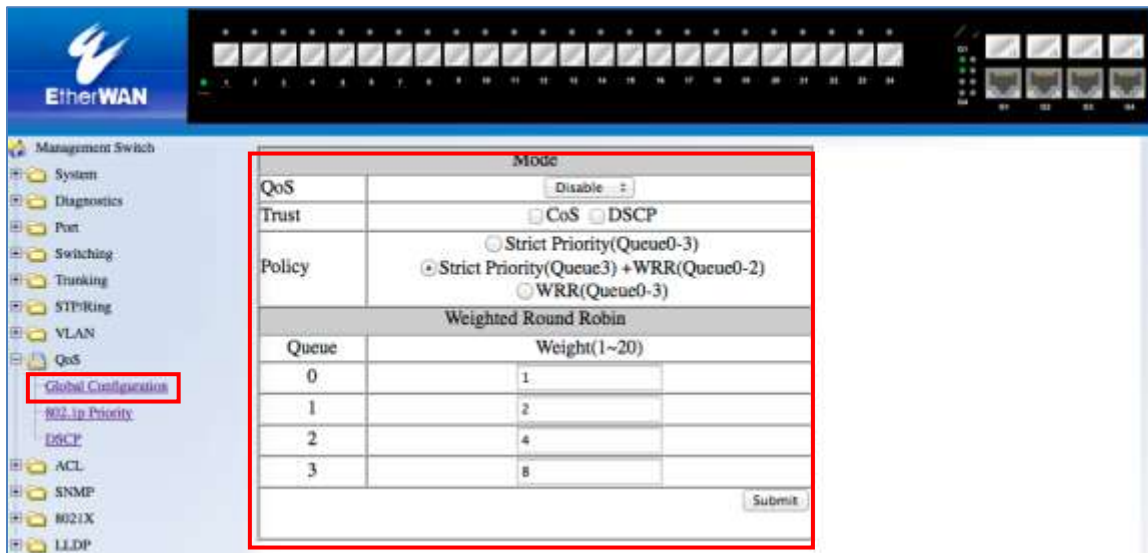
**DSPC or Diffserv Code Point** uses the first 6 bits in the ToS field of the IP(v4) packet header. This type of QoS is primarily useful if the QoS needs to pass through a router or routers. We will touch on DSPC briefly later in this section.

# Global Configuration Page

## Web GUI Interface

To navigate to the **QoS Global Configuration** page (see [below](#)):

1. Click on the **+** next to **QoS**.
2. Click on **Global Configuration**.



**Figure 85: Global Configuration**

To Enable the QoS settings:

1. Enable QoS, by selecting the drop-down box to the right of the QoS option.
2. Choose CoS and/or DSCP next to the Trust option.
3. Select the desired option next to Policy:
  - a. **Strict Priority (Queue0-3)** – **Note:** Not all switches support this mode. Packets must be emptied from the queues in order. Starting with queue 3 and ending with queue 0, the packets in each queue must be completely emptied before the next queue's packets are considered for transmission.
  - b. **Strict Priority(Queue3) +WRR(Queue0-2)** – Packets must be emptied from queue 3 first and the three remaining queues are emptied according to the WRR weights in the Weighted Round Robin section (see below).

- c. **WRR (Queue 0 – 3)** – each queue is allowed to discharge a certain number of packets (according to the WRR weights in the Weighted Round Robin section) before moving to the next queue.
4. Enter the **Weight** for each queue in the Weight Round Robin section
5. Click on the **Submit** button.
6. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))



**Note: Weighted Round Robin** – There are four text fields, one for each queue (0 – 3). A number from 1 to 20 can be assigned for each queue. This number is used with **WRR** policy and is the value of the number of packets that must be emptied from the queue before the next queue is considered. By default, these values are:

Queue	Weight
0	1
1	2
2	4
3	8

## QoS Global Configuration using the CLI Interface

This section gives information on Command line commands related to QoS and assumes the user has a working knowledge of connecting to the switch using Telnet, SSH or the Serial port.. Telnet is enabled by default. To enable or disable Telnet or SSH see the [Management Interface](#) section.

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

### Enabling/Disabling QoS

To get to the CLI level to configure QoS:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**mls qos enable**

**no mls qos**

Usage Example – Enabling QoS:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fel
switch_a(config-if)# mls qos enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example – Disabling QoS:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#int fel
switch_a(config-if)# no mls qos
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enable/Disable QoS Trust

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**mls qos trust <cos/dscp>**

**no qos trust**

Usage Example – Enable QoS Trust:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# mls qos trust cos
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example – Disable QoS Trust:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# no mls qos trust
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Configuring the Egress Expedite Queue

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**priority-queue strict**

**priority-queue out**

**no priority-queue out**

**mls qos <WRR\_WTS>** (4 values separated by spaces. Range is 1-20 (See the [Usage Example](#)).

Usage Example – Enable QoS Strict Priority (Queue 0-3):

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# priority-queue strict
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example – Enable QoS Strict Priority (Queue 3) + WRR (Queue 0-2):

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# priority-queue out
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example – Disable QoS Strict Priority:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# no priority-queue out
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example – The following example specifies the bandwidth ratios of the four transmit queues, starting with queue 0, on the switch. WRR\_WTS Weighted Round Robin (WRR) weights for the 4 queues (4 values separated by spaces). Range is 1-20.

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#mls qos 1 2 4 8
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# 802.1p Priority Page

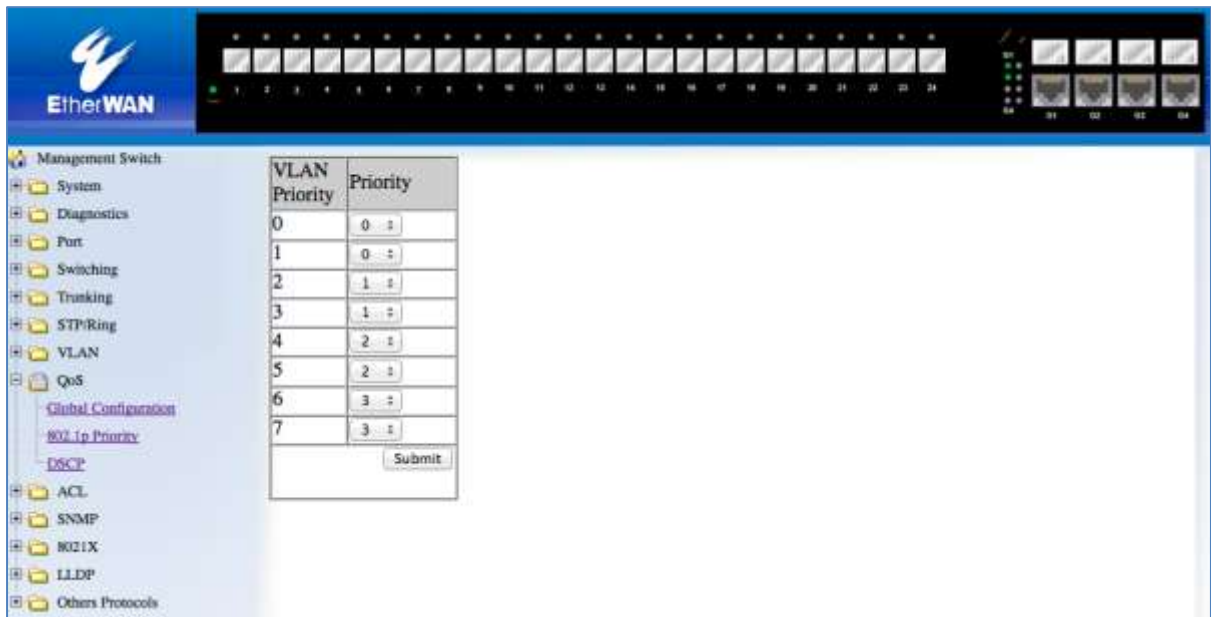
## Web GUI Interface

To navigate to the **QoS 802.1p Priority** page (see [Figure 86](#)):

1. Click on the **+** next to **QoS**.
2. Click on **802.1p Priority**.

The 802.1p Priority page allows a user to assign the queues to VLAN priorities (see [Global Configuration Page](#) for more information on queues).

Each VLAN priority is expressed as the three-bit PCP field in the 802.1Q header discussed previously. The values shown above are the default values with the higher VLAN priorities corresponding to the higher priority queues.



**Figure 86: 802.1p Priority**

By default, the higher priority queue 3 are assigned to VLAN priorities 6 and 7, queue 2 assigned to VLAN priorities 4 and 5; queue 1 assigned to VLAN priorities 2 and 3; and finally, queue 0 assigned to VLAN priorities 0 and 1.

After making any changes on the page, click on the **Submit** button to ensure that the changes are stored.

## 802.1p Priority Submenu – CLI Interface

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**wrr-queue cos-map <QUEUE\_ID> <COS\_VALUE>**

Queue ID. Range is 0-3.

COS\_VALUE CoS values. Up to 8 values (separated by spaces).

Usage Example The following example shows mapping CoS values 0 and 1 to queue 1 on the switch:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#wrr-queue cos-map 1 0 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## DSCP Page – HTTP Interface

The DSCP submenu is much like the 802.1p submenu except there are many more DSCP priorities to choose from and they are all assigned to the lowest-priority queue, 0. For each DSCP priority, the user can change the value of the queue to between 0 and 3. See Figure 3 for more information:

DSCP Priority	Priority	DSCP Priority	Priority	DSCP Priority	Priority	DSCP Priority	Priority
0	0	1	0	2	0	3	0
4	0	5	0	6	0	7	0
8	0	9	0	10	0	11	0
12	0	13	0	14	0	15	0
16	0	17	0	18	0	19	0
20	0	21	0	22	0	23	0
24	0	25	0	26	0	27	0
28	0	29	0	30	0	31	0
32	0	33	0	34	0	35	0
36	0	37	0	38	0	39	0
40	0	41	0	42	0	43	0
44	0	45	0	46	0	47	0
48	0	49	0	50	0	51	0
52	0	53	0	54	0	55	0
56	0	57	0	58	0	59	0
60	0	61	0	62	0	63	0

Submit

Figure 87: DSCP

If the user changes any values on this page, clicking on the **Submit** button allows them to take effect.

## DSCP Submenu – CLI Interface

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**mls qos map dscp-queue <dscp\_value> to <queue\_ID>**

dscp\_value: Up to 8 values (separated by spaces). Range is 0-63.

queue\_ID: Range is 0-3.

Usage Example The following example shows mapping DSCP values 0 to 3 to queue 1 on the switch:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# mls qos map dscp-queue 0 1 2 3 to 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## QoS Interface Commands – CLI Interface

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

To assign a VLAN Priority to an Interface:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **user-priority <0-7>**

Usage Example The following example shows mapping DSCP values 0 to 3 to queue 1 on the switch:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config-if) user-priority 4
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# ACL (ACCESS CONTROL LIST)

This section applies only to specific models of EtherWAN Switches.

The settings in the ACL feature of the EtherWAN switch can be used to control which packets are allowed to enter the switch (Packet Filtering), as well as to control the amount of bandwidth that can be allocated for those packets (Bandwidth Policing).

## General Overview

The ACL feature on the EtherWAN Managed Switch filters packets through access control lists. Any combination of 4 different types of access control lists (called Access Lists) can be used for this purpose. These four different types of access control lists are explained below:

### **IP Access List:**

This Access List can be used to filter IP packets based on the packet's source IP address only.

### **IP Access List (Extended):**

This Access List can be used to filter IP packets based on the packet's source and destination IP addresses, as well as the packet's source and destination transport layer protocol port numbers.

### **MAC Access List:**

This Access List can be used to filter Ethernet packets based on the packet's source and destination Ethernet addresses as well as the packet's Ethernet payload protocol number (EtherType).

### **Layer 4:**

This Access List, if it is used by itself, can only be used to classify IP packets based only on the IP packet's source and destination transport layer protocol port numbers. Use this Access List in conjunction with another type of Access List mentioned above, if you wish to filter any packet from entry to the switch that did not match the classification rules from this Access Lists, otherwise all packets that did not match the classification rules of this Access List will also be allowed entry into the switch.



**Note:** You can use any combination of the above four types of Access Lists to filter packets through the ACL feature, the switch will apply these Access Lists in the order that they were configured. Since Access List filters allow packets through, there must be at least one catch all deny rule that can deny all types of packets from entry to the switch in the very last Access List, This will ensure that only packets specified in the access list will be allowed.

# Configuring ACL

To navigate to the **ACL/ACL Configuration** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **ACL**.
2. Click on **ACL Configuration**.

In order to enable the ACL feature on the EtherWAN switch, the QoS feature must be enabled on the switch as well. In order to apply the ACL packet filtering features on a port, you must:

1. Create and configure an ACL Access List first.
2. Next, you will need to create and configure an ACL Class Map,
3. Associate the previously created ACL Access Lists to this ACL Class Map.
4. Next, create and configure an ACL Policy Map
5. Associate all the appropriate and necessary ACL Classes into this ACL Policy Map.
6. Then apply this ACL Policy Map (and all the Access Lists that it contains) to a specific port.

To enable the ACL feature on the EtherWAN switch first enable the QoS feature using the steps below (see [Figure 88](#)).

1. From the drop-down list next to **QoS**, choose the **Enable** option
2. Click on the **Submit** button. For more details see [QoS](#).

The screenshot shows the configuration page for QoS on an EtherWAN Managed Switch. The interface includes a navigation tree on the left, a status bar at the top, and a configuration form.

**Navigation Tree:**

- Management Switch
  - System
  - Diagnostics
  - Port
  - Switching
  - Trunking
  - STP Ring
  - VLAN
  - QoS
    - Global Configuration
    - 802.1p Priority
    - DSCP
  - ACL
  - SNMP
  - 802.1X
  - LLDP
  - Others Protocols

**Configuration Form:**

Mode	
QoS	<input type="button" value="Enable"/> ▾
Trust	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> Disable CP
Policy	<input type="radio"/> Strict Priority(Queue0-3) <input checked="" type="radio"/> Strict Priority(Queue3) +WRR(Queue0-2) <input type="radio"/> WRR(Queue0-3)
Weighted Round Robin	
Queue	Weight(1~20)
0	<input type="text" value="1"/>
1	<input type="text" value="2"/>
2	<input type="text" value="4"/>
3	<input type="text" value="8"/>
<input type="button" value="Submit"/>	

**Figure 88: Enabling QoS**

# ACL Policy Map

To create a new ACL Policy Map, follow the instructions below.

1. Make sure that the **Create** option is selected from the drop-down list next to **Policy Map** (see [below](#))
2. Next, make sure that the **Create** option is selected from the drop-down list under **Class Name** (see [below](#)).

Policy Map Setting			
Policy Map	Create	Policy Map Name	
Attach Class Map to Policy Map			
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type
Create			IP Access List*
IP Access List			
Access List	Create	(1-99/1300-1999)	
Action	IP address	Mask	
permit			Add
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255			
			Submit

**Figure 89: Policy Map**

Next, you will be creating a new ACL Access List which is necessary to create an ACL Class Map. From the information listed below you will find the configuration steps necessary for all of the four available ACL Access Lists. You can choose one Access List from the below list and follow the steps there to complete the configuration for that Access List. One Access List can be created during the initial ACL Policy Map creation process. After you have chosen just one Access List from below and have finished all the configuration steps for it, please continue onto step #3.

## IP Access List

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for IP Access Lists. It is divided into several sections:

- Policy Map Setting:** Includes a 'Policy Map' dropdown set to 'Create' and a 'Policy Map Name' text field.
- Attach Class Map to Policy Map:** Contains fields for 'Class Name' (with a 'Create' dropdown), 'Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)', 'Burst (1-20000 Bytes)', and 'Access List Type' (set to 'IP Access List\*').
- IP Access List:** Features an 'Access List' dropdown set to 'Create' and a text field for an ID (range 1-99/1300-1999).
- Table:** A table with columns 'Action', 'IP address', and 'Mask'. The first row has 'permit' in the Action column, '192.168.1.224' in the IP address column, and '0.0.0.31' in the Mask column. A second row is partially filled with 'permit' in the Action column and an empty IP address field.
- Buttons:** 'Remove' and 'Add' buttons are located at the end of the table rows.
- Note:** 'Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255' is displayed at the bottom.
- Submit:** A 'Submit' button is at the bottom right.

Red boxes and numbers 1-9 highlight specific elements: 1. 'Access List Type' dropdown; 2. & 3. 'Create' dropdown and ID text field; 4. ID text field; 5. & 9. 'permit' dropdown in the first table row; 6. IP address text field in the first table row; 7. Mask text field in the first table row; 8. 'Add' button; 9. 'Add' button in the second table row.

**Figure 90: IP Access List**

To configure an IP Access List (See [Figure 90](#) above):

1. Select the **IP Access List** option from the drop-down list below **Access List Type**.
2. If you have already created an IP Access List previously and would like to apply it to the new ACL Class, then select the Access List number from the drop-down list next to **Access List**.
3. If you want to create a new IP Access List, make sure that the **Create** option is selected from the drop-down list next to **Access List**.
4. To give the new IP access list an ID, enter a number in the range from 1 – 99, or from 1300 – 1999, into the text entry box next to the “Create” option drop-down list.
5. You can enter a source IP address to allow an IP packet with that source IP to gain entry into the switch. To do this, choose the permit option from the drop-down list under the **Action** column.
6. Next, enter the source IP address into the text entry box from the **IP address** column.
7. Next, enter the Comparison Mask for the source IP address in reverse logic, into the text entry box from the **Mask** column. In reverse logic, 255.255.255.0 would be 0.0.0.255.
8. Next, click on the **Add** button.

9. You can enter a source IP address in order to deny an IP packet with that source IP to gain entry into the switch. To do so, you must choose the **deny** option from the drop-down list under the **Action** column. Next, enter the IP address and mask as described in step 6 and 7.
  - a. You can also use the **any** wild card in lieu of entering a source IP address in the text entry box from the **IP address** column. You will need to do this if you wish to deny any additional IP packet from entry to the switch that did not match any of the previous rules from all the previous access control lists, otherwise these additional IP packets will also be allowed entry into the switch.

### IP Access List (Extended)

Policy Map Setting							
Policy Map	Create ▼		Policy Map Name				
Attach Class Map to Policy Map							
Class Name		Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)		Burst (1-20000 Bytes)		Access List Type	
Create ▼						IP Access List (Extended) ▼	
IP Access List(Extended)							
Access List	Create ▼		(100-199/2000-2699)				
Action	Source Address	Source Wildcard Bits	Port (1-65535)	Destination Address	Destination Wildcard Bits	Port (1-65535)	
permit ▼	192.168.1.224	0.0.0.31		192.168.1.224	0.0.0.31	21	Remove
permit ▼							Add
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255							
5 & 12		6 & 13		7	11	8 & 13	
						9	11
							10
							Submit

Figure 91: Access List Extended

1. Select the **IP Access List (Extended)** option from the drop-down list below **Access List Type** (see [Figure 91](#))
2. To apply an existing **Extended IP Access** to the new ACL Class, then select the Access List number for the previously configured **Extended IP Access** List from the drop-down list next to **Access List**.
3. if you want to create a new Extended IP Access List, verify that the **Create** option is selected from the drop-down list next to **Access List**.

4. To give this particular Extended IP access list an ID, enter a number in the range from 100 – 199, or from 2000 – 2699, into the text entry box next to the **Create** option drop-down list.
5. You can enter a source and a destination IP address to allow an IP packet with these pair of IP addresses to gain entry into the switch. To do this, choose the **permit** option from the drop-down list under the **Action** column.
6. Next, enter the source IP address of the IP packet into the text entry box under the **Source Address** column.
7. Next, enter the comparison Mask for the source IP address in reverse logic (a binary “0” in the mask means “this bit position needs to be checked”, whereas a binary “1” in the mask means “this bit position does not need to be checked”) into the text entry box from the **Source Wildcard Bits** column. In reverse logic, 255.255.255.0 is listed as 0.0.0.255.
8. Next, enter the destination IP address of the IP packet into the text entry box under the **Destination Address** column.
9. Next, enter the comparison Mask for the destination IP address in reverse logic into the text entry box from the **Destination Wildcard Bits** column.
10. Next, click on the **Add** button.
11. You can also filter the IP packet using the packet’s source and destination Transport Layer protocol port numbers in addition to the source and destination IP addresses. Just enter the source Transport Layer protocol port number into the text entry box under the **port (1-65535)** column following the source IP address comparison mask column. Next, enter the destination Transport Layer protocol port number into the text entry box under the **port (1-65535)** column following the destination IP address comparison mask column.
12. To enter an extended IP access list entry in order to deny the entry of an IP packet into the switch, you must choose the **deny** option from the drop-down list under the **Action** column. Next, enter the IP addresses and Transport Layer protocol port numbers using the same steps as in the previous two bullets.
13. You can also use the **any** wild card in lieu of entering an IP address in the text entry box from both the **Source Address** and **Destination Address** column. You will need to do this if you wish to deny any additional IP packet from entry to the switch that did not match any of the previous rules from all the previous access control lists, otherwise these additional IP packets will also be allowed entry into the switch.

## Mac Access List

Policy Map Setting									
Policy Map	Create ▾		Policy Map Name						
Attach Class Map to Policy Map									
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type						
Create ▾			MAC Access List ▾						
MAC Access List									
Access List	Create ▾		(2000-2699)						
Action	Source MAC	Mask	Destination MAC	Mask	Format	Ether type	Mask		
permit ▾	00e0.b321.03de	0000.0000.0000	00e0.b321.03df	0000.0000.0000	Ethernet II ▾	800	0000	Remove	
permit ▾					Ethernet II ▾			Add	
Note: Enter the MAC Address/Mask in HHHH.HHHH.HHHH format.									
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0000.0000.HHHH.									
Note: Enter the Ether Type/Mask in FFFF format.									
4 & 12		5 & 14		6		7 & 14		8	
						10		11	
Submit									

Figure 92: MAC Access list

1. To configure a MAC access list, select the **MAC Access List** option from the drop-down list below **Access List Type** (see [Figure 92](#)).
2. If a MAC Access List was previously created and you would like to apply it to the new ACL Class, then select the **Access List number** for the previously configured MAC Access List from the drop-down list next to **Access List**. If you want to create a new MAC Access List, insure that the **Create** option is selected from the drop-down list next to **Access List**.
3. To give this particular MAC Access List an ID, enter a number in the range from 2000 – 2699, into the text entry box next to the **Create** option drop-down list.
4. You can enter a source and a destination Ethernet address to allow a specific Ethernet packet entry into the switch. To do so, you must choose the **permit** option from the drop-down list under the **Action** column.
5. Next, enter the source Ethernet address of the Ethernet packet into the text entry box under the **Source MAC** column.


6. Next, enter the **Comparison Mask** for the source Ethernet address in reverse logic (Ex. 255.255.255.0 is 0.0.0.255 in reverse logic) into the text entry box from the **Mask** column following the **Source MAC** column.
7. Next, enter the destination Ethernet address of the Ethernet packet into the text entry box under the **Destination MAC** column.
8. Next, enter the comparison Mask for the destination Ethernet address in reverse logic into the text entry box from the **Mask** column following the **Destination MAC** column. Next, choose the appropriate encapsulation format of the Ethernet packet that you want to allow entry into the switch from the drop-down list under the **Format** column.
9. Next, click on the **Add** button.
10. You can also filter the Ethernet packet using the Ethernet packet payload's **EtherType number** in addition to the source and destination Ethernet addresses. Just enter the **EtherType number** of the Ethernet packet into the text entry box under the **Ether type** column.
11. Next, you can also enter a **comparison mask** for the EtherType number into the text entry box under the **Mask** column next to the **Ether type** column.
12. To enter a MAC Access List entry in order to deny the entry of an Ethernet packet into the switch, you must choose the **deny** option from the drop-down list under the **Action** column.
13. Next, enter the Ethernet addresses and the EtherType number using the same steps as in steps 11 and 12.
14. You can also use the **any** wild card in lieu of entering an Ethernet address in the text entry box from both the **Source MAC** and **Destination MAC** column. You will need to do this if at any time this Access List should become the very last Access List rule in a ACL Policy Map to serve as the catch all deny rule in order to deny any and all types of packets from entry into the switch that did not match any of the previous rules from all the previous access control lists.

## Layer 4

Policy Map Setting			
Policy Map	Create ▼	Policy Map Name	
Attach Class Map to Policy Map			
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type
Create ▼			Layer 4 ▼
Layer 4			
Option	Destination port ▼	TCP/UDP Port No.(1-65535)	21
	2		3
			Submit

**Figure 93: Layer 4**

1. To use the Layer 4 access list feature and apply it to the new ACL Class, select the **Layer 4** option from the drop-down list below **Access List Type** (see [Figure 93](#)).
2. You can enter a source or destination Transport Layer protocol port number to allow any IP packet with this port number to gain entry into the switch. To do this, choose the appropriate port number type (Source port or Destination port) from the drop-down list next to **Option**.
3. Next, enter the correct port number into the text entry box next to “TCP/UDP Port No.(1-65535)”.
4. After you have finished configuring just one ACL Access List from the previous step, you must now create a name for the new ACL Class Map that will be associated with this Access List. To do this, just enter a name for the new ACL Class Map into the text box under **Class Name** (see [Figure 94](#)).

 **Note:** Since this particular Access List type does not contain any deny rules, this Access List will have to be used in conjunction with another type of Access List, if you wish to filter any packet from entry to the switch that did not match the classification rules from this Access Lists. Otherwise all packets that did not match the classification rules of this Access List will also be allowed entry into the switch.

Policy Map Setting			
Policy Map	Create ▼	Policy Map Name	<input type="text"/>
Attach Class Map to Policy Map			
Class Name	4	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)
Create ▼	IP_Class_1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
		Access List Type	
		IP Access List* ▼	
IP Access List			
Access List	Create ▼	1	(1-99/1300-1999)
Action	IP address	Mask	
permit ▼	192.168.1.224	0.0.0.31	Remove
permit ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Add
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255			
			Submit

Figure 94: IP Access List Name

## Bandwidth Limiting

1. The amount of bandwidth that is being allocated for the traffic that is being allowed under this new ACL Class can also be limited. To do this, enter the bandwidth amount that you want to allocate for the traffic in the text entry box under **Police Rate (1-1000000Kbps)** (see [Figure 95](#)).
2. To allow certain amount of bursting in the traffic enter the maximum number of bytes that are allowed in a single continuous burst, under **Burst (1-20000 Bytes)**.

Policy Map Setting			
Policy Map	Create ▼	Policy Map Name	
Attach Class Map to Policy Map			
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type
Create ▼	IP_Class_1	50000 <b>1</b>	10000 <b>2</b> IP Access List* ▼
IP Access List			
Access List	Create ▼	1	(1-99/1300-1999)
Action	IP address	Mask	
permit ▼	192.168.1.224	0.0.0.31	Remove
permit ▼			Add
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255			
			Submit

**Figure 95: Police Rate**

- Next, please enter a name in the text entry box next to “Policy Map Name” for the new ACL “Policy Map” that you are currently creating, and click on the submit button (see [Figure 96](#)).

Policy Map Setting			
Policy Map	Create ▼	Policy Map Name	IP_Policy_1 <b>3</b>
Attach Class Map to Policy Map			
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type
Create ▼	IP_Class_1	50000	10000 IP Access List* ▼
IP Access List			
Access List	Create ▼	1	(1-99/1300-1999)
Action	IP address	Mask	
permit ▼	192.168.1.224	0.0.0.31	Remove
permit ▼			Add
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255			
			Submit

**Figure 96: Policy Map Name**

## Applying a Policy Map to a Port

To apply an ACL **Policy Map** to a port, just follow the instructions below.

1. Select the correct ACL **Policy Map** from the drop-down list next to **Policy Map** (see [Figure 97](#)).
2. Next, check the boxes below **Attach Class Map to Policy Map** next to all the ports that you would like to apply this Policy Map to.
3. Click on the **Attach** button.

The screenshot shows the 'Policy Map Setting' configuration page. The left sidebar contains a tree view with categories like System, Diagnostics, Poet, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, VLAN, QoS, ACL, SNMP, 802.1X, LLDP, and Others Protocols. The main content area is titled 'Policy Map Setting' and includes the following sections:

- Policy Map Setting:** A dropdown menu for 'Policy Map' (set to 'IP\_Policy\_1') and a text field for 'Policy Map Name' (set to 'IP\_Policy\_1').
- Attach Policy Map to Interface:** A grid of checkboxes for ports 1 through 28. Ports 1, 2, and 3 are checked. A red box labeled '2' highlights this grid. An 'Attach' button is located to the right of the grid, with a red box labeled '3' highlighting it.
- Attach Class Map to Policy Map:** A table with columns: Class Name (IP\_Class\_1), Police Rate (50000), Burst (10000), and Access List Type (IP Access List\*). A 'Remove' button is next to the row.
- IP Access List:** A table with columns: Access List (1\*), Action (Permit), IP address (192.168.1.224), and Mask (0.0.0.31). A 'Remove' button is next to the row. Below the table is an 'Add' button and a note: 'Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255'.

At the bottom right of the page are 'Submit' and 'Remove' buttons.

Figure 97: Applying a Policy Map to a Port

## Modifying/Adding an Existing Policy Map

To modify or add to an existing ACL **Policy Map**, just follow the instructions below.

1. Select the correct ACL **Policy Map** from the drop-down list next to **Policy Map** (see [Figure 98](#))
2. Next, detach the Policy Map from all the ports by deselecting the check boxes below **Attach Class Map to Policy Map** for the ports you would like to remove the policy map.
3. Click on the **Attach** button.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a Policy Map. The left sidebar contains a tree view with categories like System, Diagnostics, Port, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, VLAN, QoS, ACL, SNMP, RST, LLD, and Others Protocols. The main area is titled 'Policy Map Setting' and includes a dropdown for 'Policy Map' (set to 'IP\_Policy\_1') and a text field for 'Policy Map Name' (set to 'IP\_Policy\_1'). Below this is a section 'Attach Policy Map to Interface' with a grid of checkboxes for ports 1-28. A section 'Attach Class Map to Policy Map' contains fields for 'Class Name' (IP\_Class\_1), 'Police Rate' (50000), 'Burst' (10000), and 'Access List Type' (IP Access List\*). The 'IP Access List' section has a table with columns for 'Action', 'IP address', and 'Mask', containing one entry: 'Permit', '192.168.1.224', and '0.0.0.31'. A note at the bottom says 'Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255'. Buttons for 'Submit' and 'Remove' are at the bottom right.

Figure 98: Modifying a Policy Map

## Adding a New ACL Class to an Existing Policy Map

If you would like to create a new ACL Class and add it to this ACL Policy Map follow the steps below

1. Make sure that the **Create** option is selected from the drop-down list under **Class Name** (see [Figure 99](#))
2. Next, follow the instructions on how to create a new

3. [ACL Policy](#) Map on page [204](#).
4. Next, click on the **Submit** button.

Policy Map Setting													
Policy Map	IP_Policy_1 ▾			Policy Map Name	IP_Policy_1								
Attach Policy Map to Interface													
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7	<input type="checkbox"/> 8	<input type="checkbox"/> 9	<input type="checkbox"/> 10	<input type="checkbox"/> 11	<input type="checkbox"/> 12	<input type="checkbox"/> 13	<input type="checkbox"/> 14
<input type="checkbox"/> 15	<input type="checkbox"/> 16	<input type="checkbox"/> 17	<input type="checkbox"/> 18	<input type="checkbox"/> 19	<input type="checkbox"/> 20	<input type="checkbox"/> 21	<input type="checkbox"/> 22	<input type="checkbox"/> 23	<input type="checkbox"/> 24	<input type="checkbox"/> 25	<input type="checkbox"/> 26	<input type="checkbox"/> 27	<input type="checkbox"/> 28
<input type="button" value="Attach"/>													
Attach Class Map to Policy Map													
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type										
<span style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px;">Create ▾</span>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	IP Access List* ▾										
<b>1</b>													
IP Access List													
Access List	Create ▾ <input type="text"/> (1-99/1300-1999)												
Action	IP address	Mask											
permit ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>										
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255													
<b>3</b>												<span style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px;">Submit</span>	<input type="button" value="Remove"/>

**Figure 99: Adding a New ACL Class to an Existing Policy Map**

### Adding an Existing ACL Class to an Existing Policy Map

If you would like to add an existing ACL Class to this ACL Policy Map (see [Figure 100](#)):

1. Select the correct ACL Class from the drop-down list under **Class Name**, and then wait for the GUI to update itself.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

Policy Map Setting				
Policy Map	IP_Policy_1 ▼		Policy Map Name	IP_Policy_1
Attach Policy Map to Interface				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
				Attach
Attach Class Map to Policy Map				
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type	
IP_Class_2 ▼			IP Access List* ▼	Remove
IP Access List				
Access List	2* ▼			
Action	IP address	Mask		
Permit ▼	192.168.1.102	0.0.0.0		Remove
permit ▼				Add
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255				
				Submit Remove

**Figure 100: Policy Map Setting – Class Name**

3. You can confirm that the ACL Class has been added correctly to this Policy Map by checking the dropdown list under “Class Name”. If you see the newly added ACL Class in the list above the dash line, then it has been added properly (see below).

Policy Map Setting				
Policy Map	IP_Policy_1 ▼		Policy Map Name	IP_Policy_1
Attach Policy Map to Interface				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
				Attach
Attach Class Map to Policy Map				
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type	
IP_Class_2 ▼	50000	10000	IP Access List* ▼	Remove
IP Class 1				
IP_Class_2				
Create action				
IP Access List				
Action	IP address	Mask		
Permit ▼	192.168.1.102	0.0.0.0		Remove
permit ▼				Add
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255				
				Submit Remove

**Figure 101: Policy Map Setting**

## Removing an ACL Class

If you would like to remove an ACL Class from this ACL Policy Map:

1. Make sure to select the correct ACL Class that is above the dash line from the drop-down list under **Class Name** (see [Figure 102](#)).
2. Next, click on the **Remove** button under **Attach Class Map to Policy Map**.

The screenshot displays the 'Policy Map Setting' configuration page. At the top, the 'Policy Map' is set to 'IP\_Policy\_1' and the 'Policy Map Name' is 'IP\_Policy\_1'. Below this is the 'Attach Policy Map to Interface' section, which includes a grid of checkboxes for interfaces 1 through 28 and an 'Attach' button. The main section is 'Attach Class Map to Policy Map', which contains a table with columns for 'Class Name', 'Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)', 'Burst (1-20000 Bytes)', 'Access List Type', and a 'Remove' button. The 'Class Name' dropdown is open, showing 'IP\_Class\_2' selected. The 'Remove' button is highlighted with a red box. Below this is the 'IP Access List' section, which includes a table for adding IP addresses and masks, and a 'Create' button. At the bottom, there are 'Submit' and 'Remove' buttons.

**Figure 102: Removing an ACL Class**

3. You can confirm that the ACL Class has been removed from this Policy Map by checking the dropdown list under **Class Name**. If you do not see the ACL Class in the list above the dash line, but see it below the dash line, then it means it has been removed from this Policy Map (see [Figure 103](#)).

Policy Map Setting				
Policy Map	IP_Policy_1 ▼	Policy Map Name	IP_Policy_1	
Attach Policy Map to Interface				
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 5
<input type="checkbox"/> 6	<input type="checkbox"/> 7	<input type="checkbox"/> 8	<input type="checkbox"/> 9	<input type="checkbox"/> 10
<input type="checkbox"/> 11	<input type="checkbox"/> 12	<input type="checkbox"/> 13	<input type="checkbox"/> 14	<input type="checkbox"/> 15
<input type="checkbox"/> 16	<input type="checkbox"/> 17	<input type="checkbox"/> 18	<input type="checkbox"/> 19	<input type="checkbox"/> 20
<input type="checkbox"/> 21	<input type="checkbox"/> 22	<input type="checkbox"/> 23	<input type="checkbox"/> 24	<input type="checkbox"/> 25
<input type="checkbox"/> 26	<input type="checkbox"/> 27	<input type="checkbox"/> 28	<input type="button" value="Attach"/>	
Attach Class Map to Policy Map				
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type	
IP_Class_1 ▼	50000	10000	IP Access List* ▼	<input type="button" value="Remove"/>
IP_Class_1	IP Access List			
IP_Class_2				
Create				
Action	IP address	Mask		
Permit ▼	192.168.1.224	0.0.0.31	<input type="button" value="Remove"/>	
permit ▼			<input type="button" value="Add"/>	
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255				
				<input type="button" value="Submit"/> <input type="button" value="Remove"/>

**Figure 103: Verifying ACL Class Removal**

**To remove an existing ACL Policy Map entirely, follow the instructions below:**

1. Select the correct ACL **Policy Map** that you want to remove entirely, from the drop-down list next to **Policy Map** (see [Figure 104](#))
2. Next, detach the Policy Map from all the ports by deselecting all the check boxes below **Attach Class Map to Policy Map** for all the selected ports,
3. Click on the **Attach** button.
4. Next, click on the **Remove** button.

Management Switch

- System
- Diagnostics
- Port
- Switching
- Trunking
- STP/Ring
- VLAN
- QoS
- ACL
  - ACL Information
  - ACL Configuration
- SNMP
- 802.1X
- LLDP
- Others Protocols

**Policy Map Setting**

Policy Map: IP\_Policy\_1 **1** Policy Map Name: IP\_Policy\_1

**Attach Policy Map to Interface**

1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  
 15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28

**3** Attach

**Attach Class Map to Policy Map**

Class Name	PoIce Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type	
IP_Class_1	50000	10000	IP Access List*	Remove

**IP Access List**

Access List: 1\*

Action	IP address	Mask	
Permit	192.168.1.224	0.0.0.31	Remove
permit			Add

Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255

**4** Submit Remove

**Figure 104: Removing a Policy Map**

To remove an existing ACL Class entirely, follow the instructions below.

1. Make sure that the ACL **Class** is not associated with any ACL Policy Map. If it is, you must remove it from that Policy Map first (see [Modifying/Adding an Existing Policy Map](#)).
2. Next, make sure that the **Create** option is selected from the drop-down list next to **Policy Map** (see [Figure 105](#)).
3. Next, select the correct ACL Class from the drop-down list under **Class Name**, and then wait for the GUI to update itself.
4. Next, click on the **Remove** button under **Attach Class Map to Policy Map**

Policy Map Setting				
Policy Map	2	Create ▼	Policy Map Name	
Attach Class Map to Policy Map				
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type	4
IP_Class_2 ▼			IP Access List* ▼	Remove
IP Access List				
Access List	2* ▼			
Action	IP address	Mask		
Permit ▼	192.168.1.102	0.0.0.0		Remove
permit ▼				Add
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255				
Submit				

Figure 105: Policy Map 2

5. You can confirm that this ACL Class has been removed completely by checking the drop-down list under “Class Name”. If you do not see the ACL Class in the list then it means it has been completely removed (see below).

Policy Map Setting			
Policy Map	Create ▼	Policy Map Name	
Attach Class Map to Policy Map			
Class Name	Police Rate(1-1000000kbps)	Burst (1-20000 Bytes)	Access List Type
Create ▼			IP Access List* ▼
IP Class 1	IP Access List		
Create			
Access List	Create ▼	(1-99/1300-1999)	
Action	IP address	Mask	
permit ▼			Add
Note: Enter Mask in reverse like 0.0.0.255			
			Submit

Figure 106: Policy Map 3

## ACL Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

### Enabling QoS

To enable the ACL feature on the EtherWAN switch by enabling the QoS feature on the switch, just follow the steps below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **mls qos enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# mls qos enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Creating a Standard IP Access List

To create a new Standard IP Access List to allow or deny an IP address/range access to the switch, use the following CLI commands with the Access list ID in the range from 1 – 99, or from 1300 – 1999:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip-access-list <1-99, 1300-1999> permit <source IP> <source bit mask>**

**ip-access-list <1-99, 1300-1999> deny <source IP> <source bit mask>**

**ip-access-list <1-99, 1300-1999> deny any**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip-access-list 1 permit 192.168.1.224 0.0.0.31
switch_a(config)# ip-access-list 1 deny 192.168.1.224 0.0.0.31
switch_a(config)# ip-access-list 1 deny any
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Creating an Extended IP Access List

To create a new Extended IP Access List to allow or deny an source IP address/range and destination IP address/range pair access to the switch, use the following CLI commands with the Access list ID in the range from 100 – 199, or from 2000 – 2699:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip-access-list <100-199, 2000-2699> permit ip <source IP> <source bit mask>**  
**<destination IP> <destination bit mask>**

**ip-access-list <100-199, 2000-2699> deny ip <source IP> <source bit mask>**  
**<destination IP> <destination bit mask>**

**ip-access-list <100-199, 2000-2699> deny ip any any**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip-access-list 100 permit ip 192.168.1.224 0.0.0.31
192.168.1.224 0.0.0.31
switch_a(config)#ip-access-list 100 deny ip 192.168.1.224 0.0.0.31
192.168.1.224 0.0.0.31
switch_a(config)#ip-access-list 100 deny ip any any
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Creating a MAC Access List

To create a new MAC Access List to allow or deny a source and destination Ethernet address pair access to the switch, use the CLI commands below with the Access list ID in the range from 100 – 199, or from 2000 – 2699.:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

```
mac-access-list <2000-2699> permit <source MAC address> <source bit mask>  
<destination MAC address> <destination bit mask> <encapsulation format:  
1=Ethernet II, 2=SNAP, 4=802.3, 8=LLC> ether-type <EtherType> < EtherType  
bit mask>
```

```
mac-access-list <2000-2699> deny <source MAC address> <source bit mask>  
<destination MAC address> <destination bit mask> <encapsulation format:  
1=Ethernet II, 2=SNAP, 4=802.3, 8=LLC> ether-type <EtherType> < EtherType  
bit mask>
```

```
mac-access-list <2000-2699> deny any any <encapsulation format: 1=Ethernet  
II, 2=SNAP, 4=802.3, 8=LLC> ether-type <EtherType> < EtherType bit mask>
```

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable  
switch_a#configure terminal  
switch_a(config)#mac-access-list 2000 permit 00e0.b321.03de  
0000.0000.0000 00e0.b321.03df 0000.0000.0000 1 ether-type 800 0000  
switch_a(config)#mac-access-list 2000 deny 00e0.b321.03de  
0000.0000.0000 00e0.b321.03df 0000.0000.0000 1 ether-type 800 0000  
switch_a(config)#mac-access-list 2000 deny any any 1 ether-type 800  
0000  
switch_a(config)#q  
switch_a#
```

## Creating an ACL Class Map with Layer 4 Access List

In order to create a Layer 4 Access List you must create it within an ACL Class Map. Use the CLI commands below to create an ACL Class Map together with the Layer 4 Access List. The Layer 4 Access List only classifies the ingress packets for the ACL Policy Map that it is associated with; therefore, all packets will be allowed entry to the switch with the Layer 4 Access List. You will have to use this Access List in conjunction with another type of Access List, if you wish to filter any packet that did not match the classification rules from this Access List.



**Note:** The bandwidth policing capabilities of the ACL Class cannot be configured here; it can only be configured during the ACL Policy Map creation or modification:

CLI Command Mode:

**General Configuration Mode**  
**Class Map Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**class-map <Class Map Name>**  
**match layer4 source-port <TCP/UDP Port number>**  
**match layer4 destination-port <TCP/UDP Port number>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#class-map FTP
switch_a(config-cmap)#match layer4 destination-port 21
switch_a(config-cmap)#q
switch_a(config)#
switch_a(config)#class-map FTP_Download
switch_a(config-cmap)#match layer4 source-port 20
switch_a(config-cmap)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Creating a ACL Class Map with an IP or MAC Access List

To create a new ACL Class Map with a Standard/Extended IP Access List or a MAC Access List, you must have first created a Standard/Extended IP Access List or MAC Access List already. You can then use the CLI commands below to create a new ACL Class Map and assign one (you can only assign one Access List per Class Map) existing Standard/Extended IP Access List, or MAC Access List, to the ACL Class Map by referencing its Access list ID.



**Note:** The bandwidth policing capabilities of the ACL Class cannot be configured here; it can only be configured during the ACL Policy Map creation or modification:

CLI Command Mode:

**General Configuration Mode**  
**Class Map Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**class-map <ACL Class Name>**  
**match access-group <Access List ID>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#class-map Layer_2-3_Class
switch_a(config-cmap)#match access-group 1
switch_a(config-cmap)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Creating an ACL Policy Map

To create a new ACL Policy Map you must have first created the ACL Class Maps that you want to assign to the ACL Policy Map. You can then use the CLI commands below to create the new ACL Policy Map and assign one or multiple existing ACL Class Maps to the ACL Policy Map by referencing its ACL Class Map name. You can also complete or modify the bandwidth policing capabilities of the ACL Class Maps used during the ACL Policy Map creation process

CLI Command Mode:

**General Configuration Mode**  
**Policy Map Configuration Mode**  
**Policy Map Class Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**policy-map** <ACL Policy Name>  
**class** <ACL Class Name>  
**police** <1-1000000> <1-20000> **exceed-action drop**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#policy-map IP_Policy_1
switch_a(config-pmap)#class IP_Class_1
switch_a(config-pmap-c)#police 50000 5000 exceed-action drop
switch_a(config-pmap-c)#q
switch_a(config-pmap)#class IP_Class_2
switch_a(config-pmap-c)#police 50000 5000 exceed-action drop
switch_a(config-pmap-c)#q
switch_a(config-pmap)#class IP_Class_3
switch_a(config-pmap-c)#police 50000 5000 exceed-action drop
switch_a(config-pmap-c)#q
switch_a(config-pmap)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Applying an Existing ACL Policy to a Port

To apply the ACL packet filtering features on a port, you must have first created an ACL Policy already. You can then use the CLI commands below to apply the existing ACL Policy to a port.

CLI Command Mode:

**General Configuration Mode**  
**Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**interface <Interface Name>**  
**service-policy input <ACL Policy Name>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface fe1
switch_a(config-if)#service-policy input IP_Policy_1
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Deleting an ACL Class

You can use the CLI commands below to delete an existing ACL Class.

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **no class-map <ACL Class Name>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no class-map IP_Class_1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Deleting an ACL Policy

You can use the below CLI commands to delete an existing ACL Policy:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **no policy-map <ACL Policy Name>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no policy-map IP_Policy_1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# SNMP

SNMP is a TCP/IP application layer network management protocol that allows any TCP/IP device to be managed across a TCP/IP network. It is based on the client-server paradigm. The server (called a SNMP Agent) runs a process on the managed device that listens for a client's (a network management software running on a computer, usually called a NMS, short for Network Management Station) polling requests to fetch or to set a data item on the managed device. The SNMP Agent can also send alert messages (called Traps) to a NMS automatically, based on the occurrence of certain events on the device that the Agent resides.

## SNMP General Settings

To navigate to the **SNMP General Settings** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **SNMP**.
2. Click on **SNMP General Settings**.

To configure the general settings for the SNMP feature (see [Figure 107](#)):

1. The SNMP server on the switch can be enabled or disabled by selecting the appropriate choice from the dropdown list next to SNMP Status.
2. Enter a short description (up to 256 characters) into the text entry box next to Description, for the purpose of switch identification.
3. Enter a name into the text entry box next to Location, for the purpose of identifying the location of the switch.
4. Enter a name (up to 256 characters) into the text entry box next to Contact, to identify the entity that is responsible for this switch.
5. Enter a trap community name (up to 256 characters) into the text entry box next to any one of the 5 Trap community name entry boxes from Trap Community Name 1 to Trap Community Name 5.
  - a. Community names identify the SNMP Trap community group that the traps on this switch should be sending to. The identical Trap community names should also be set on the NMS hosts that will be receiving the traps. Each name defined corresponds with the **Trap host IP address** entry box with the same number. For example, **Trap Community Name 1** corresponds with **Trap Host 1 IP Address**.
6. Enter an IP address, for the NMS host(s) that should be receiving traps from this switch, into the text entry box next to any one of the 5 Trap host IP address entry boxes from **Trap Host 1 IP Address to Trap Host 5 IP Address**

7. Enable or disable the link down trap by selecting the appropriate choice from the drop-down list next to **Link Down Trap**. This will allow or stop the switch from sending a trap to the identified trap community groups when any port on the switch moves from the link up state to the link down state.
8. Enable or disable the link up trap by selecting the appropriate choice from the drop-down list next to **Link Up Trap**. This will allow or stop the switch from sending a trap to the identified trap community groups when any port on the switch moves from the link down state to the link up state.
9. Enable or disable the MAC notification trap by selecting the appropriate choice from the drop-down list next to **MAC Notification Trap**. This will allow or stop the switch from sending a trap to the identified trap community groups anytime there is a change in the MAC table on certain selected ports of the switch.
10. Set the interval between the MAC notification traps that you want the switch to send by entering the interval (in number of seconds from 1 to 65535) into the text entry box next to **MAC Notification Interval (1 to 65535 seconds)**.
11. Set the size of the MAC notification history table by entering the total number of records (from 1 to 500) that the switch will keep for user to review at any one time into the text entry box next to **MAC Notification History Size (1 to 500)**.
12. Select which ports on the switch for which traps should be sent when there is a new MAC address added to the MAC table for the port, by checking the appropriate check boxes for these ports in the **MAC Notification Added** section.
13. Select which ports on the switch for which traps should be sent when there is a MAC address being removed from the MAC table for the port, by checking the appropriate check boxes for these ports in the **MAC Notification Removed** section.
14. Click on the **Update** button after you have finished the configuration of the SNMP Server (Agent) General Settings.
15. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

Management Switch	SNMP Status	1	Enable ▾																																																																
	<b>SNMP General Setting</b>																																																																		
	Description	2	Hub_Switch_1																																																																
	Location	3	First_Floor_Closet																																																																
	Contact	4	Administrator																																																																
	Trap Community Name 1		Trap_Group_1																																																																
	Trap Community Name 2		Trap_Group_2																																																																
	Trap Community Name 3	5	Trap_Group_3																																																																
	Trap Community Name 4		Trap_Group_4																																																																
	Trap Community Name 5		Trap_Group_5																																																																
	Trap Host 1 IP Address		192.168.1.100																																																																
	Trap Host 2 IP Address		192.168.2.100																																																																
	Trap Host 3 IP Address	6	192.168.3.100																																																																
	Trap Host 4 IP Address		192.168.4.100																																																																
	Trap Host 5 IP Address		192.168.5.100																																																																
	Link Down Trap	7	Enable ▾																																																																
	Link Up Trap	8	Enable ▾																																																																
	MAC Notification Trap	9	Enable ▾																																																																
	MAC Notification Interval (1 to 65535 seconds)	10	60																																																																
	MAC Notification History Size (1 to 500)	11	100																																																																
	MAC Notification Added	12	<table border="0"> <tr><td>P1</td><td>P2</td><td>P3</td><td>P4</td><td>P5</td><td>P6</td><td>P7</td><td>P8</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>P9</td><td>P10</td><td>P11</td><td>P12</td><td>P13</td><td>P14</td><td>P15</td><td>P16</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>P17</td><td>P18</td><td>P19</td><td>P20</td><td>P21</td><td>P22</td><td>P23</td><td>P24</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>P25</td><td>P26</td><td>P27</td><td>P28</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	P7	P8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	P9	P10	P11	P12	P13	P14	P15	P16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	P17	P18	P19	P20	P21	P22	P23	P24	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	P25	P26	P27	P28					<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				
P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	P7	P8																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																												
P9	P10	P11	P12	P13	P14	P15	P16																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																												
P17	P18	P19	P20	P21	P22	P23	P24																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																												
P25	P26	P27	P28																																																																
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																																																																
	MAC Notification Removed	13	<table border="0"> <tr><td>P1</td><td>P2</td><td>P3</td><td>P4</td><td>P5</td><td>P6</td><td>P7</td><td>P8</td></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>P9</td><td>P10</td><td>P11</td><td>P12</td><td>P13</td><td>P14</td><td>P15</td><td>P16</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>P17</td><td>P18</td><td>P19</td><td>P20</td><td>P21</td><td>P22</td><td>P23</td><td>P24</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>P25</td><td>P26</td><td>P27</td><td>P28</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	P7	P8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	P9	P10	P11	P12	P13	P14	P15	P16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	P17	P18	P19	P20	P21	P22	P23	P24	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	P25	P26	P27	P28					<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				
P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	P7	P8																																																												
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																												
P9	P10	P11	P12	P13	P14	P15	P16																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																												
P17	P18	P19	P20	P21	P22	P23	P24																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																												
P25	P26	P27	P28																																																																
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																																																																
		14	<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>																																																																

**Figure 107: SNMP General Settings**

## Configuring SNMP v1 & v2 Community Groups

To navigate to the **SNMP v1/v2** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **SNMP**.
2. Click on **SNMP v1/v2**.

To configure the SNMP v1 & v2 community groups (see [Figure 108](#)):

1. Enter the SNMP community name into the text entry box next to **Get Community Name**. This will allow the NMS to poll status information from the switch (read only).
2. Enter the SNMP community name, into the text entry box next to **Set Community Name**. This will allow a NMS to change the status of a data item in the switch.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button after you have finished the configuration.
4. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

SNMP V1/V2c Setting		
Get Community Name	1	public
Set Community Name	2	private
		3 Update Setting

**Figure 108: Community Name V1/V2c**

## Configuring SNMP v3 Users

To navigate to the **SNMP v3** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **SNMP**.
2. Click on **SNMP v3**.

### Adding SNMP v3 Users to the switch

1. Click on the **Add User** button. See [below](#).



**Figure 109: Add User**

2. Next, select the desired authentication/privacy protocols from the drop-down list next to "NMP Version, according to the chart below (also see [Figure 110](#)):
  - a. **SNMPv3 No-Auth** = Only user name match is required for SNMP access to the switch. No user authentication or data encryption will be used.
  - b. **SNMPv3 Auth-MD5** = User authentication will be required using the MD5 hashing algorithm, but no data encryption will be used.
  - c. **SNMPv3 Auth-SHA** = User authentication will be required using the SHA-1 hashing algorithm, but no data encryption will be used.
  - d. **SNMPv3 Priv Auth-MD5** = User authentication will be required using the MD5 hashing algorithm, and in addition, all data in protocol message will be encrypted using 56-bit DES encryption algorithm.
  - e. **SNMPv3 Priv Auth-SHA** = User authentication will be required using the SHA-1 hashing Algorithm, and in addition, all data in protocol message will be encrypted using 56-bit DES encryption algorithm.

SNMP V3 Setting	
SNMP Version	SNMPv3 No-Auth ▼
User Name	SNMPv3 No-Auth
Access Mode	SNMPv3 Auth-MD5
Auth. Password	SNMPv3 Auth-SHA
Privacy PassPhrase	SNMPv3 Priv Auth-MD5
	SNMPv3 Priv Auth-SHA
Submit	

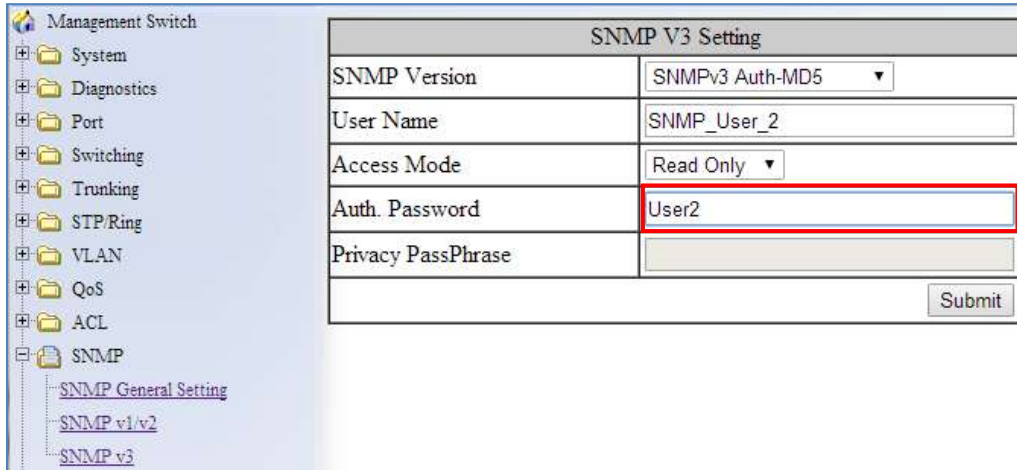
**Figure 110: SNMP v3 Settings**

3. Next, enter the desired username in the text entry box next to **User Name**.
4. Next, please select the desired access authorization for the user from the drop-down list next to **Access Mode**. See [Figure 111](#).

SNMP V3 Setting	
SNMP Version	SNMPv3 No-Auth ▼
User Name	SNMP_User_1
Access Mode	Read Only ▼
Auth. Password	
Privacy PassPhrase	
Submit	

**Figure 111: User name & Access Mode**

- Next, if authentication is required for this user, and you have chosen an authentication protocol, then the text entry box next to **Auth. Password** will have been enabled. Enter a password for this user inside this text entry box. See [Figure 112](#).



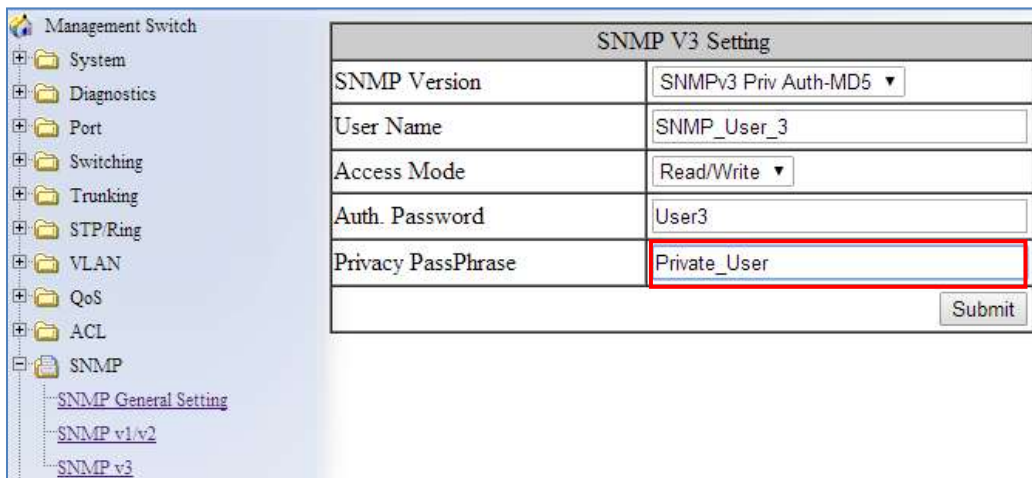
The image shows a web interface for configuring SNMP V3 settings. On the left is a navigation tree with categories like System, Diagnostics, Port, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, VLAN, QoS, ACL, and SNMP. Under SNMP, there are links for 'SNMP General Setting', 'SNMP v1/v2', and 'SNMP v3'. The main area is titled 'SNMP V3 Setting' and contains a table with the following fields:

SNMP V3 Setting	
SNMP Version	SNMPv3 Auth-MD5
User Name	SNMP_User_2
Access Mode	Read Only
Auth. Password	User2
Privacy PassPhrase	

A 'Submit' button is located at the bottom right of the form. The 'Auth. Password' field is highlighted with a red border.

**Figure 112: Auth Password**

- Next, if both authentication and privacy are required for this user, and you have chosen both an authentication and privacy protocol, then the text entry box next to **Privacy PassPhrase** will have been enabled. Enter a pass phrase inside this text entry box, as part of the key used to encrypt the protocol message for this user. See [Figure 113](#).



The image shows a web interface for configuring SNMP V3 settings. On the left is a navigation tree with categories like System, Diagnostics, Port, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, VLAN, QoS, ACL, and SNMP. Under SNMP, there are links for 'SNMP General Setting', 'SNMP v1/v2', and 'SNMP v3'. The main area is titled 'SNMP V3 Setting' and contains a table with the following fields:

SNMP V3 Setting	
SNMP Version	SNMPv3 Priv Auth-MD5
User Name	SNMP_User_3
Access Mode	Read/Write
Auth. Password	User3
Privacy PassPhrase	Private_User

A 'Submit' button is located at the bottom right of the form. The 'Privacy PassPhrase' field is highlighted with a red border.

**Figure 113: Privacy PassPhrase**

## Deleting SNMP v3 Users from the switch

1. Go to SNMP → SNMP v3, you should see a list of previously configured users. Next, click on the **Delete User** button. See [below](#).

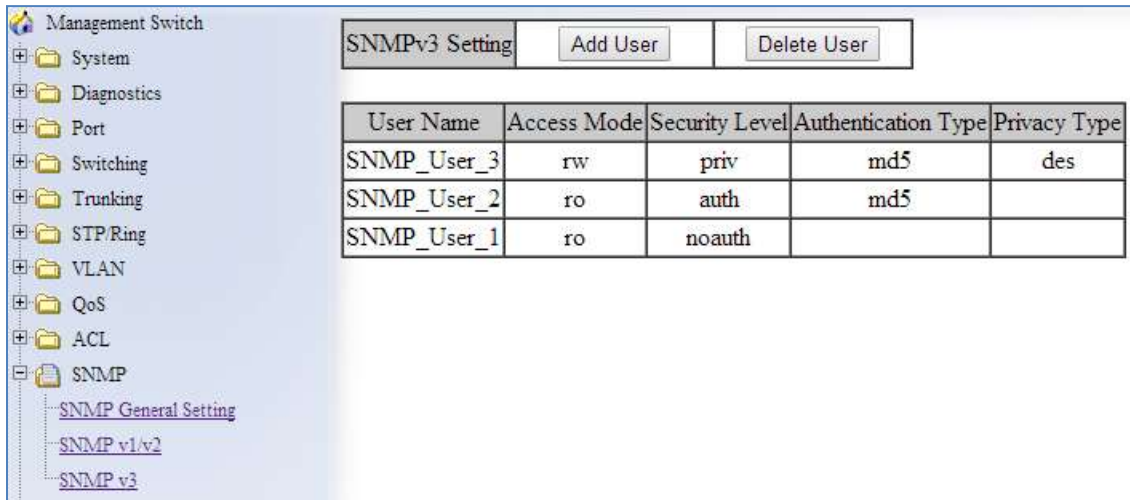


Figure 114: Delete User

2. Next, select the user that you wish to delete from the drop-down list next to **Select User Name**.
3. Click on the **Submit** button. See [below](#).



Figure 115: Select User

# SNMP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

## Enabling SNMP and configuring general settings

To enable the SNMP feature of the switch, and configure its general settings (Description, Location, and Contact information), you must use the below CLI commands. (for more information on CLI command usage and typographic conventions please click here):

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**snmp-server enable**

**snmp-server description <1 -256 characters>**

**snmp-server location <1 -256 characters>**

**snmp-server contact <1 -256 characters>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a> enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# snmp-server enable
switch_a(config)# snmp-server description Hub_Switch_1
switch_a(config)# snmp-server location First_Floor_Closet
switch_a(config)# snmp-server contact Administrator
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Configuring SNMP Traps

To configure the Trap features of the SNMP protocol on the switch, you use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode:

**General Configuration Mode**

**Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

```
snmp-server trap-community 1 <1 -256 characters >  
snmp-server trap-community 2 <1 -256 characters >  
snmp-server trap-community 3 <1 -256 characters >  
snmp-server trap-community 4 <1 -256 characters >  
snmp-server trap-community 5 <1 -256 characters >  
snmp-server trap-ipaddress 1 <IP Address>  
snmp-server trap-ipaddress 2 <IP Address>  
snmp-server trap-ipaddress 3 <IP Address>  
snmp-server trap-ipaddress 4 <IP Address>  
snmp-server trap-ipaddress 5 <IP Address>  
snmp-server trap-type enable linkDown  
snmp-server trap-type enable linkup  
snmp-server trap-type enable mac-notification  
snmp-server mac-notification interval <1 to 65535 seconds>  
snmp-server mac-notification history-size <1 to 500 entries>  
snmp-server trap mac-notification added  
snmp-server trap mac-notification removed
```

## Usage Example:

```
switch_a> enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-community 1 Trap_Group_1
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-community 2 Trap_Group_2
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-community 3 Trap_Group_3
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-community 4 Trap_Group_4
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-community 5 Trap_Group_5
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-ipaddress 1 192.168.1.100
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-ipaddress 2 192.168.2.100
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-ipaddress 3 192.168.3.100
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-ipaddress 4 192.168.4.100
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-ipaddress 5 192.168.5.100
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-type enable linkDown
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-type enable linkup
switch_a(config)# snmp-server trap-type enable mac-notification
switch_a(config)# snmp-server mac-notification interval 60
switch_a(config)# snmp-server mac-notification history-size 100
switch_a(config)#interface fel
switch_a(config-if)#snmp-server trap mac-notification added
switch_a(config-if)#snmp-server trap mac-notification removed
switch_a(config-if)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Configuring SNMP v1 & v2 Community Groups

To configure the SNMP v1 & v2 community groups to make the SNMP feature more secure, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**snmp-server enable**

**snmp-server community get <1 -256 characters>**

**snmp-server community set <1 -256 characters>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a> enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# snmp-server community get public
switch_a(config)# snmp-server community set private
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Adding SNMP v3 Users

To add SNMP v3 Users to the switch and maximize the security for the SNMP feature, you must use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**snmp-server v3-user <username> <ro|rw> noauth**

**snmp-server v3-user <username> <ro|rw> auth <md5|sha> <password>**

**snmp-server v3-user <username> <ro|rw> priv <md5|sha> <password> des <pass\_phrase>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a> enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# snmp-server v3-user SNMP_User_1 ro noauth
switch_a(config)# snmp-server v3-user SNMP_User_2 ro auth md5 User2
switch_a(config)# snmp-server v3-user SNMP_User_3 rw priv md5 User3
des Private_User
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# IEEE 802.1X

EtherWAN switches support the IEEE 802.1X protocol to provide port based security on a switch port against unauthorized access. In order for this protocol to work, two additional components are required; an EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) compatible RADIUS server to authenticate a client station that is trying to gain access to the network through a port on the switch, and an 802.1X client software (known as the “Supplicant” software) used on the end device to communicate with the RADIUS server for the purposes of authenticating the end device that is trying to gain access to the network through the switch port.

When an end device is initially connected to a port on the EtherWAN switch where the 802.1X protocol is enabled on the port, the switch will only pass 802.1X authentication traffic (known as EAPOL traffic) on that port between the Supplicant on the end device and the RADIUS server, and will not allow any other traffic to pass. After the initial connection, the EtherWAN switch will request authentication credentials from the Supplicant in the end device that has just connected to the port. After the switch receives the proper authentication credentials from the Supplicant in the end device, the switch will sent the credentials to the EAP compatible RADIUS server that’s configured in the switch for the purpose of authenticating the end device. If the end device is successfully authenticated by the RADIUS server, the RADIUS server will sent an “Access-Accept” message to the switch; at this point the EtherWAN switch will inform the Supplicant in the end device of the successful authentication and open up the port for all network traffic to pass.

## Configuring 802.1X from the GUI system

To navigate to the **802.1X / Radius Configuration** page:

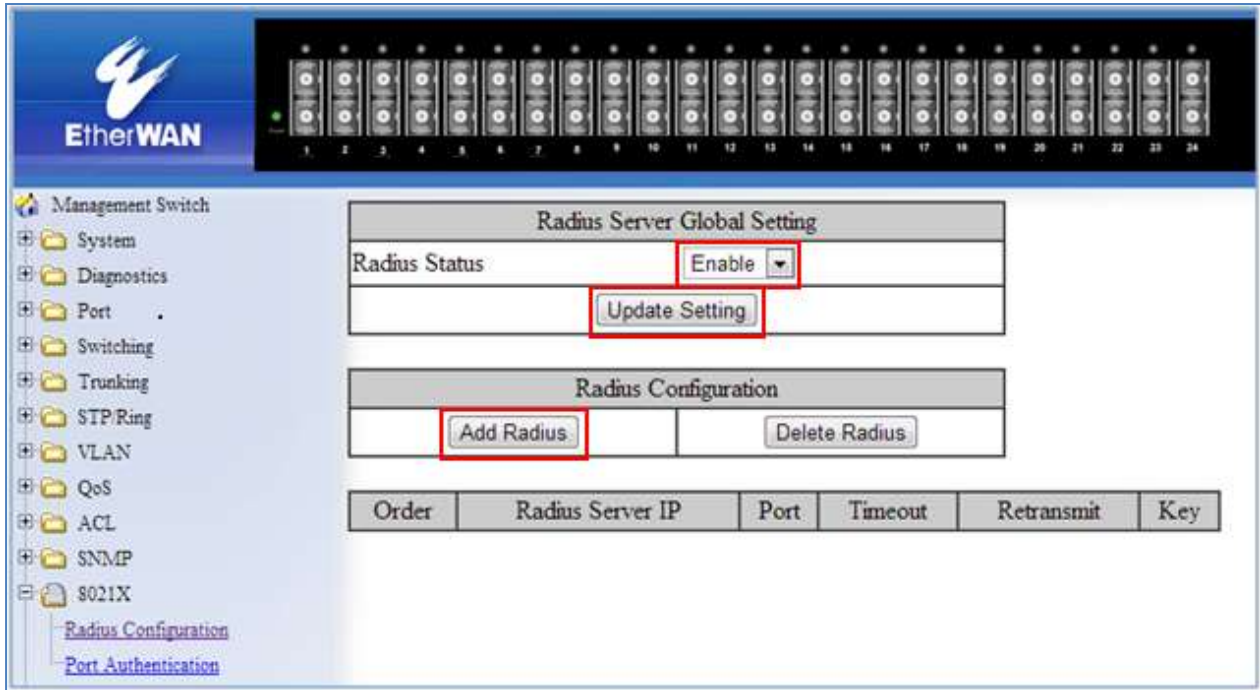
1. Click on the **+** next to **802.1X**
2. Click on **Radius Configuration**

### Enabling Radius

By default, the 802.1X function is globally disabled on the EtherWAN switch. If you want to use the 802.1X port based security on a port, you must enable it globally on the switch first, and then enable it on a per port basis.

To enable the 802.1X function globally on the switch:

1. Choose **enable** from the drop down list next to **Radius Status**
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button. (See [Figure 116](#))



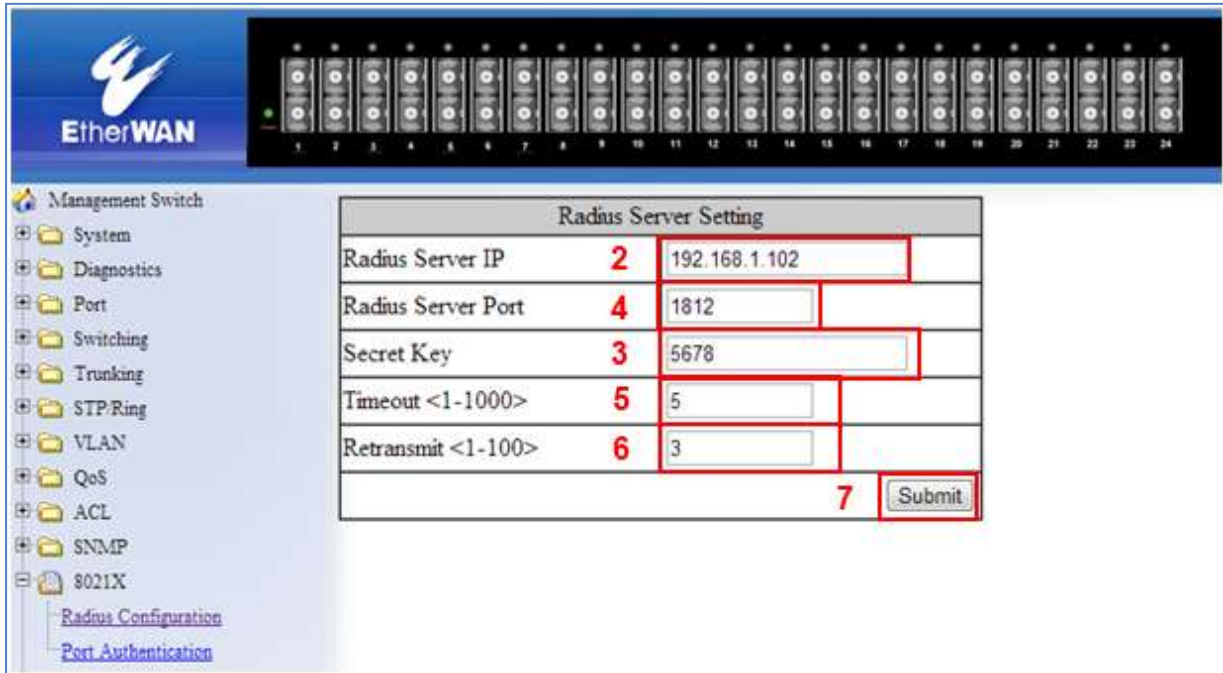
**Figure 116: Enable Radius**

## Adding a Radius Server

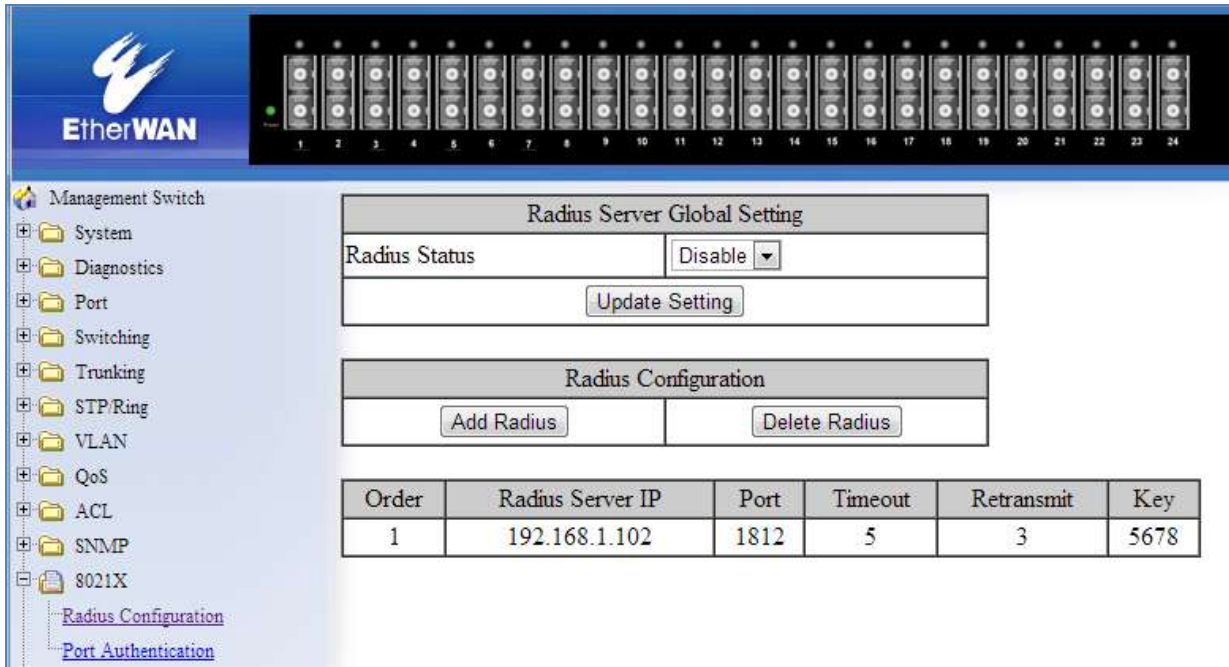
Next, you will need to configure the settings that the switch will need in order to connect to a RADIUS server.

1. Click on the **Add Radius** button (see [above](#)).
2. Next, enter the IP address of the RADIUS server that the switch will use in order to authenticate in the text entry box next to **Radius Server IP** (see [Figure 117](#)).
3. Enter the password for RADIUS server in the text entry box next to **Secret Key**.
4. Optionally, the UDP port number for the RADIUS server (if it is different from the standard default 1812) can be changed. To do this, enter the port number in the text entry box next to **Radius Server Port**.
5. Next, you can choose to configure the minimum time that the switch must wait, before it is allowed to retransmit a message to the RADIUS server due to no response. To do this, enter the number of seconds that the switch must wait (between 1 and 1000 seconds) into the text entry box next to **Timeout <1-1000>** .

6. Next, you can choose to configure the maximum number of times that the switch can attempt to retransmit a message to the RADIUS server. To do this, please enter a number (from 1 to 100) into the text entry box next to **Retransmit**.
7. Click on the **Submit** button.



**Figure 117: Radius Setup**



**Figure 118: Resulting Radius Server Setup**

### Enabling 802.1X on a Port

After the 802.1X port based security is enabled globally, you must enable it locally on the port.

To navigate to the **802.1X / Port Authentication** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **802.1X**
2. Click on **Port Authentication**

To enable 802.1X on a port (see [Figure 119](#)):

1. Choose the desired port from the drop-down list next to **Interface**, to have the 802.1X feature applied to that port.
2. Next, make sure **Enabled** is selected from the drop-down list next to **Authentication State**, this will enable the 802.1X function on the previously selected port.
3. Next, make sure that the choice **Auto** is selected in the drop-down list next to **Port Control**; this will allow the port to use 802.1X to authentic the end station.
  - a. If you choose to have the port to be always unauthorized or to be always authorized, you can choose the appropriate choice in the drop-down list.

4. Next, you can choose to have the end station to be re-authenticated periodically. To do this, choose **Enabled** in the drop-down list next to **Periodic Re-authentication**.
5. After you have enabled periodic re-authentication, you must also configure the time period interval for the re-authentication of the end station. To do this, enter the number of seconds (1-4294967295), in to the text entry box next to **Re-authentication Period**.
6. Next, **Update Setting** button in order to activate all the configured settings (see the below screenshot)

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for 802.1x Port Setting. The configuration table is as follows:

802.1x Port Setting		
Interface	1	fe1
Authentication State	2	Enabled
Port Control	3	Auto
Periodic Reauthentication	4	Enable
Reauthentication Period <1-4294967295>	5	3600 (sec.)
6		Update Setting

Port	Port Enabled	Port Control	Port Status	Periodic Reauthentication	Reauthentication Period
1					
2	false	Auto	Unauthorized	enabled	3600
3					
4					

**Figure 119: Enabling 802.1X on a Port**

# LLDP

LLDP is a network discovery protocol that defines a method for network access devices using Ethernet connectivity to advertise information about devices to peer devices on the same physical LAN and store information about the network. It allows a device to learn higher layer management reachability and connection endpoint information from adjacent devices.

Using LLDP, a device is able to advertise its own identification information, its capabilities and media-specific configuration information, as well as learn the same information from the devices connected to it. LLDP advertises this information over Logical Link-Layer Control frames and the information received from other agents in IEEE-defined Management Information Bases (MIB) modules.

LLDP significantly aids in the deployment of any network device that supports the protocol. As a media independent protocol intended to be run on all IEEE 802 devices, LLDP may be used to discover routers, bridges, repeaters, WLAN APs, IP telephones, network camera or any LLDP-enabled device, regardless of manufacturer. Since LLDP runs over the data-link layer only, a switch running one network layer protocol can discover and learn about an access device running a different network layer protocol.

# LLDP General Settings

To navigate to the **LLDP General Settings** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **LLDP**.
2. Click on **General Settings**.

## Enable/Disable LLDP

To enable LLDP on the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Select Enable or Disable from the Drop Down box in the **LLDP** field of the LLDP Transmit Settings box (see [Figure 120](#))
2. Click on the **Update Settings** button.
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

## Holdtime Multiplier

The Holdtime multiplier for transmit TTL is used to compute the actual time-to-live (TTL) value used in an LLDP frame. The TTL value is the length of time the receiving device should maintain the information in its MIB. To compute the TTL value, the system multiplies the LLDP transmit (TX) interval by the holdtime multiplier. For example, if the LLDP transmit (TX) interval is 30 and the holdtime multiplier for TTL is 4, then the value 120 is encoded in the TTL field in the LLDP header.

To adjust the Holdtime multiplier:

1. Enter a numeric value between 2 and 10 (default is 4) in the Holdtime Multiplier text box.
2. Click on the **Update Settings** button.

The TX Interval setting adjusts the time that LLDP information is transmitted by the switch. Values can range from 5 to 32768 seconds (default is 30 seconds).

To adjust the TX Interval setting (see [Figure 120](#)):

1. Enter a numeric value between 5 and 32768 (default is 30) in the TX Interval text box.
2. Click on the **Update Settings** button.
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

## Global TLV Setting

The global TLV (Time – Length – Value) settings are advertised by the switch to other LLDP devices. The TLVs supported by the EtherWAN Managed Switch are (see [Figure 120](#)):

- Port Description
- System Name
- System Description
- System Capabilities
- Management Address
- Port VLAN ID
- MAC/PHY Configuration/Status
- Port And Protocol VLAN ID
- VLAN Name
- Protocol Identity
- Power Via MDI
- Link Aggregation
- Maximum Frame Size

To enable specific TLVs for the EtherWAN Managed Switch:

1. Select the check box for each TLV that is to be enabled or select the checkbox for the **All** option which will enable all TLVs for the switch.
2. Click on the **Update Settings** button.
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

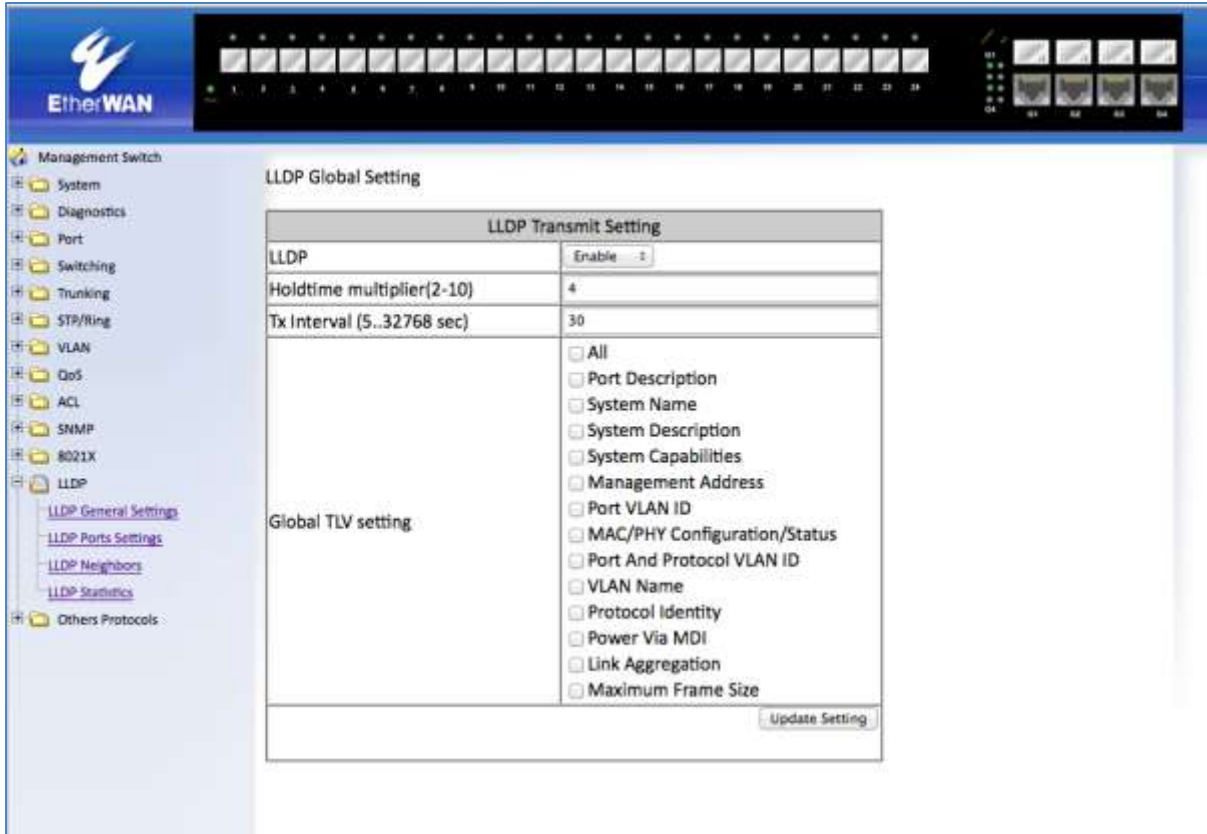


Figure 120: LLDP Global Settings

## LLDP Ports Settings

LLDP Ports Settings allows the individual ports on the switch to be configured for LLDP independently of one another. Each port can be configured to transmit LLDP information, receive LLDP information, and notify (via SNMP or Syslog) if there are changes in the LLDP information received from neighboring devices.

To navigate to the **LLDP Port Settings** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **LLDP**.
4. Click on **LLDP Ports Settings** (see [Figure 121](#))

### Enabling LLDP transmission for a specific Port

To enable the transmission of LLDP information for a specific port:

1. Select Enable from the Drop Down box under the Transmit field for each port for which the transmission of LLDP information should be enabled.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

### Enabling LLDP Reception for a specific Port

To enable the reception of LLDP information for a specific port:

1. Select Enable from the Drop Down box under the Receive field for each port for which the reception of LLDP information should be enabled.
2. Click on the **Submit** button.

### Enabling Notifications

To enable notification whenever a port receives changed LLDP information:

1. Select Enable from the Drop Down box under the Notify field for each port that should send a notification whenever received LLDP information changes.
2. Click on the **Submit** button
3. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#)) after making changes shown on this page.

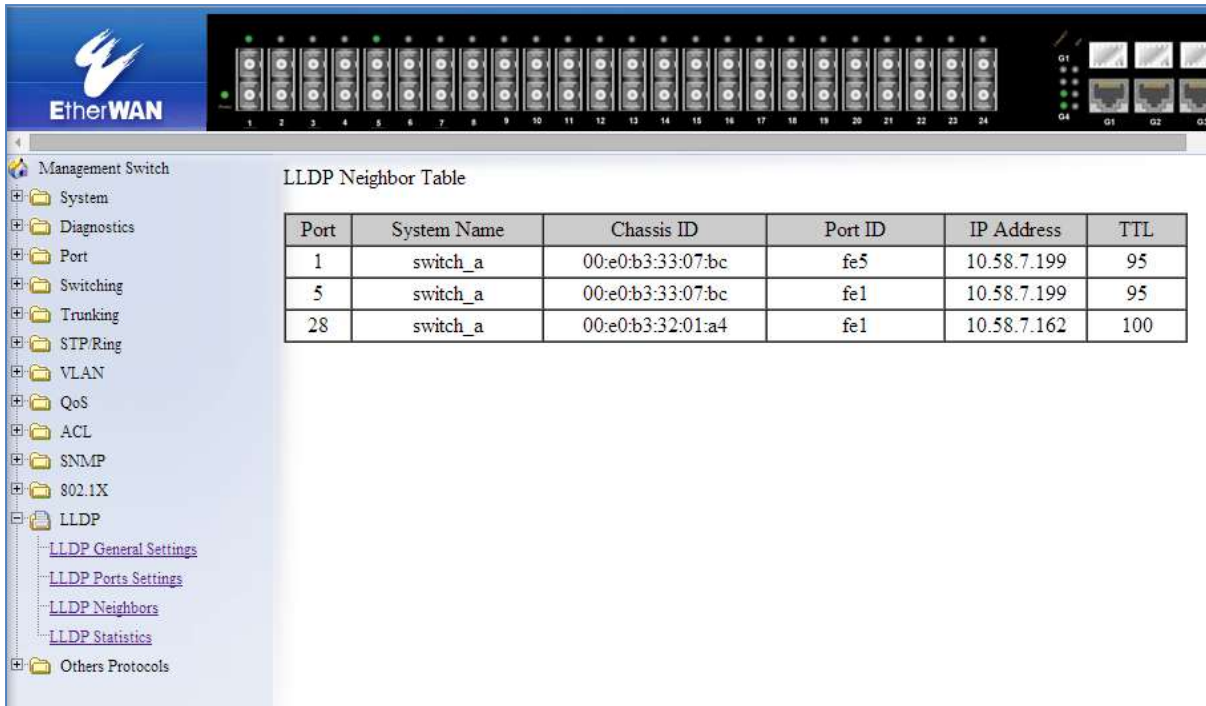
Port	Link Status	Transmit	Receive	Notify
1	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
2	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
3	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
4	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
5	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
6	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
7	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
8	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
9	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
10	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
11	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
12	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
13	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
14	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
15	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
16	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
17	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
18	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
19	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
20	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
21	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
22	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
23	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
24	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
25	Running	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
26	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
27	Running	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
28	Down	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅	Disabled ⇅
				Submit

Figure 121: LLDP Ports Settings

## LLDP Neighbors

LLDP Neighbors is a read-only page (see [Figure 122](#)) that will display all the LLDP capable devices detected by the switch. The following information about connected LLDP-enabled devices is displayed in a tabular format. The columns displayed are:

- **Port** – The local switch port to which the remote device is connected.
- **Chassis ID** – The MAC address of the remote device.
- **Port ID** – The port number of the remote device.
- **IP Address** – The management IP address of the remote device.
- **TTL** – Time to Live, the amount time remaining before the remote device's LLDP is aged-out from the switch.



The screenshot shows the EtherWAN Management Switch interface. The top header includes the EtherWAN logo and a row of 24 port status indicators. The left sidebar contains a navigation tree with categories like System, Diagnostics, Port, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, VLAN, QoS, ACL, SNMP, 802.1X, LLDP, and Others Protocols. The LLDP category is expanded to show sub-items: LLDP General Settings, LLDP Ports Settings, LLDP Neighbors, and LLDP Statistics. The main content area displays the 'LLDP Neighbor Table' with the following data:

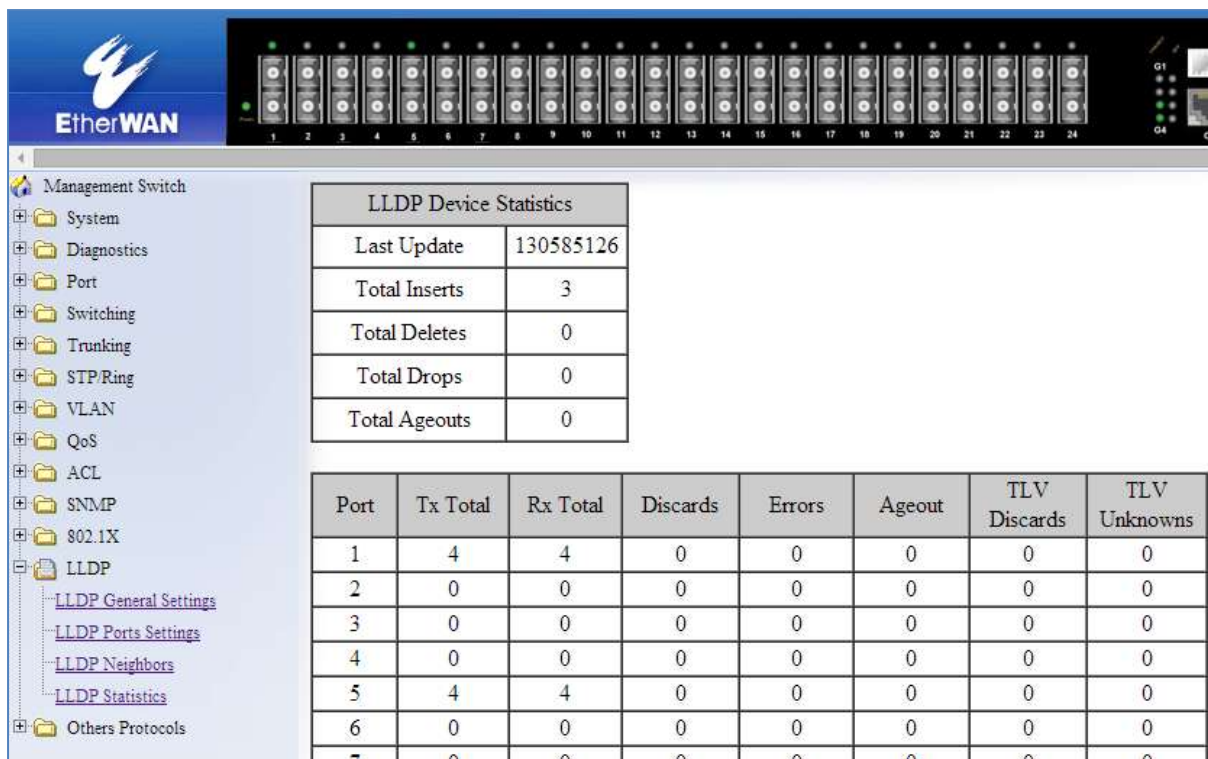
Port	System Name	Chassis ID	Port ID	IP Address	TTL
1	switch_a	00:e0:b3:33:07:bc	fe5	10.58.7.199	95
5	switch_a	00:e0:b3:33:07:bc	fe1	10.58.7.199	95
28	switch_a	00:e0:b3:32:01:a4	fe1	10.58.7.162	100

Figure 122: LLDP Neighbors

## LLDP Statistics

This is a read-only page (see [Figure 123](#)) that displays LLDP device statistics and LLDP statistics on a per-port basis. The information collected on this page includes:

- Port – switch port number.
- TX Total – Total LLDP packets sent.
- RX Total – Total LLDP packets received.
- Discards – Number of LLDP packets discarded.
- Errors – LLDP errors.
- Ageout – LLDP information that has been aged out by the switch.
- TLV Discards – TLV information discarded
- TLV Unknown – TLV information that is unknown



**Figure 123: LLDP Statistics**

# LLDP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

## Enable/Disable LLDP

To enable or disable LLDP on the EtherWAN Managed Switch use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**lldp enable**

**no lldp enable**

Usage Example – Enabling LLDP:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#lldp enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example – Disabling LLDP:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no lldp enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## LLDP Holdtime Multiplier

To modify LLDP holdtime multiplier use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lldp holdtime multiplier <1-10>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#lldp holdtime multiplier 4
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## LLDP Transmit Interval

To modify LLDP Transmit Interval use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lldp txinterval <5-32768>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# lldp txinterval 30
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enable/Disable Global LLDP TLVs

To enable or disable global LLDP TLVs use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lldp tlv-global <TLV>**

### TLV Parameters

TLV Parameters	Description
<b>port-descr</b>	Port Description
<b>sys-name</b>	System Name TLV
<b>sys-descr</b>	System Description TLV
<b>sys-cap</b>	System Capabilities
<b>mgmt-addr</b>	Management Address
<b>port-vlan-id</b>	Port VLAN ID
<b>mac-phy</b>	MAC/PHY Configuration/Status
<b>port-and-protocol</b>	Port And Protocol VLAN ID
<b>vlan-name</b>	VLAN Name
<b>protocol-identity</b>	Protocol Identity
<b>link-aggregation</b>	(Link Aggregation
<b>max-frame</b>	Maximum Frame Size

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# lldp tlv-global mgmt-addr
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling LLDP Transmit on a Port

To enable LLDP Transmit for a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lldp tx-pkt**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#interface fe1
switch_a(config)# lldp tx-pkt
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling LLDP Receive on a Port

To enable LLDP Receive for a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lldp rcv-pkt**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#interface fe1
switch_a(config)# lldp rcv-pkt
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling LLDP Notify

To enable LLDP Notify for a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lldp notification**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#interface fe1
switch_a(config)# lldp notification
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling Transmission of the Management IP

To enable the transmission of the management IP address through a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lldp mgmt-ip vlan <vlan id>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#interface fe1
switch_a(config)# lldp mgmt-ip vlan 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

## Enabling Specific TLV's on a Port

To enable specific TLVs on a port use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **lldp tlv-select <TLV ID>** (see [TLV Parameters](#) on page [256](#))

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a#interface fe1
switch_a(config)# lldp tlv-select mgmt-addr
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

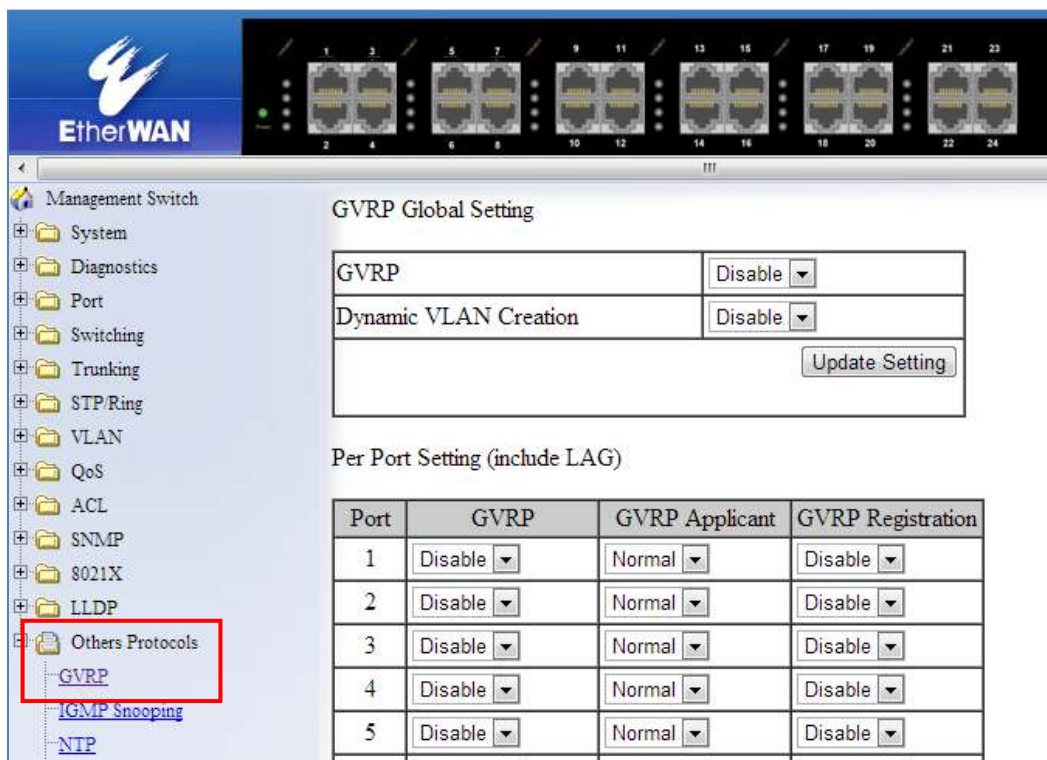
# OTHER PROTOCOLS

## GVRP

Defined in IEEE 802.1Q, GVRP is a protocol used to dynamically create VLANs on a switch. Any IEEE 802.1Q compliant switch must implement this protocol.

To navigate to the **Other Protocols / GVRP** page (see [Figure 124](#)):

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **GVRP**.



**Figure 124: GVRP**

## General Overview

To enable the GVRP protocol on your network, you must make sure that the switches in your network are configured with the minimum requirements for each type of switches listed below:

For the **Access Switches** at the edge of the network, below are the minimum requirements:

- All of the user VLANs have been created in the VLAN Database.
- The IP address for the Management VLAN has been configured.
- The appropriate Port Type (Access or Trunk) and the PVID have been configured for all the ports of the switch.
- All the member Trunk ports for all the user VLANs have been configured.
- The GVRP protocol has been globally enabled, and GVRP is locally enabled on the Trunk Ports as well.

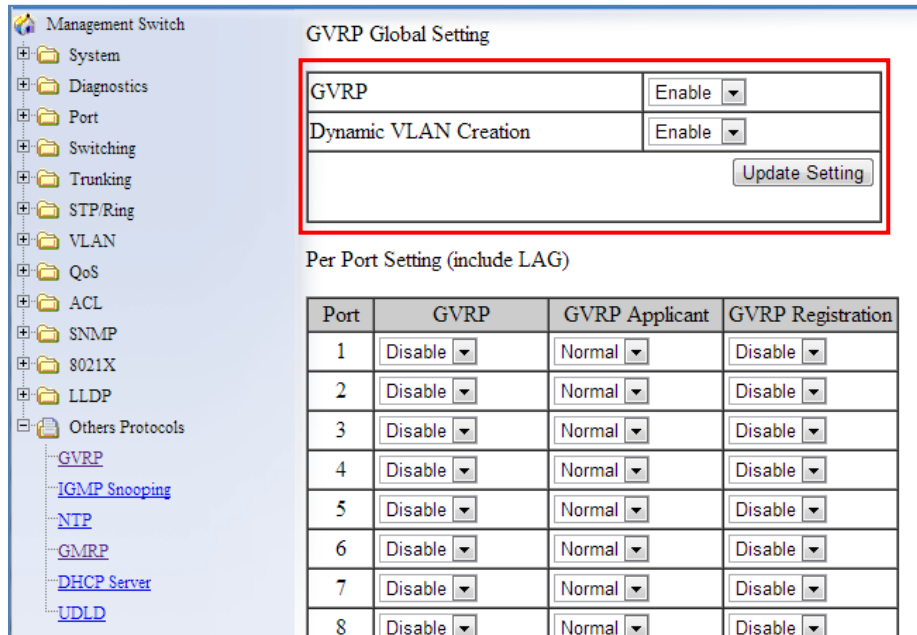
For the **Distribution Switches** in the core of the network, below are the minimum requirements:

- The Management VLAN has been created in the VLAN Database.
- The IP address for the Management VLAN has been configured.
- The appropriate Port Type (Access or Trunk) and the PVID have been configured for all the ports of the switch.
- The GVRP protocol has been globally enabled and GVRP is locally enabled on the Trunk Ports as well.
- The Dynamic VLAN Creation feature has been enabled.

## Enabling the GVRP Protocol at the Global Level

To enable the GVRP protocol globally on a distribution switch (see [Figure 125](#)):

1. Under **GVRP Global Setting**, choose the **Enable** option from the drop-down list next to **GVRP**.
2. Choose the **Enable** option from the drop-down list next to **Dynamic VLAN Creation**.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.



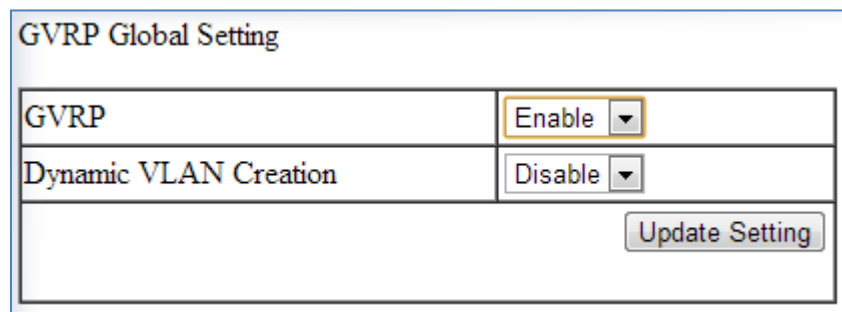
The screenshot shows the configuration interface for a Management Switch. On the left is a navigation tree with categories like System, Diagnostics, Port, Switching, Trunking, STP/Ring, VLAN, QoS, ACL, SNMP, 8021X, LLDP, and Others Protocols. Under 'Others Protocols', GVRP is selected. The main area is titled 'GVRP Global Setting' and contains two rows of settings: 'GVRP' and 'Dynamic VLAN Creation', both set to 'Enable'. An 'Update Setting' button is located below these settings. Below the global settings is a section for 'Per Port Setting (include LAG)' which contains a table with 8 rows and 4 columns: Port, GVRP, GVRP Applicant, and GVRP Registration. All GVRP settings in this table are currently set to 'Disable'.

Port	GVRP	GVRP Applicant	GVRP Registration
1	Disable	Normal	Disable
2	Disable	Normal	Disable
3	Disable	Normal	Disable
4	Disable	Normal	Disable
5	Disable	Normal	Disable
6	Disable	Normal	Disable
7	Disable	Normal	Disable
8	Disable	Normal	Disable

**Figure 125: GVRP Configuration Distribution Switch**

To enable the GVRP protocol globally on an **Access Switch** (see [Figure 126](#)):

1. Under **GVRP Global Setting**, choose the **Enable** option from the drop-down list next to **GVRP**.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button.



The screenshot shows the configuration interface for an Access Switch. The main area is titled 'GVRP Global Setting' and contains two rows of settings: 'GVRP' set to 'Enable' and 'Dynamic VLAN Creation' set to 'Disable'. An 'Update Setting' button is located below these settings.

**Figure 126: GVRP Configuration Access Switch**

## Enabling the GVRP Protocol at the Port Level

To navigate to the **Other Protocols / GVRP** page (see [Figure 124](#)):

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **GVRP**.

To enable the GVRP protocol locally at the port level, for both the Access switch and the Distribution switch, apply the following procedures to all the Trunk Ports of the switch:

1. For all the Trunk Ports under the **Per Port Setting (include LAG)** section, choose the **Enable** option from the drop-down list under the **GVRP** column.
2. For all the Trunk Ports under the **Per Port Setting (include LAG)** section, choose the **Active** or **Normal** option from the drop-down list under the **GVRP Applicant** column.
  - **Active** - Use this option if you want to run the GVRP protocol on that Trunk Port even if it is blocked by the STP protocol.
  - **Normal** – Use this option if you do not wish to run the GVRP protocol on a Trunk Port when it is being blocked by the STP protocol.
3. For all the Trunk Ports under the **Per Port Setting (include LAG)** section, choose the **Enable** option from the drop-down list under the **GVRP Registration** column.
4. Click on the **Update Setting** button.
5. Save the configuration (see the [Save Configuration Page](#))

The screenshot displays the GVRP configuration page. On the left is a navigation tree with 'Others Protocols' expanded to show 'GVRP'. The main area is divided into two sections: 'GVRP Global Setting' and 'Per Port Setting (include LAG)'. The global settings table has two rows: 'GVRP' set to 'Enable' and 'Dynamic VLAN Creation' set to 'Disable', with an 'Update Setting' button below. The per-port settings table has four columns: 'Port', 'GVRP', 'GVRP Applicant', and 'GVRP Registration'. The table contains 8 rows of data for ports 1 through 8.

Port	GVRP	GVRP Applicant	GVRP Registration
1	Enable	Active	Enable
2	Enable	Normal	Enable
3	Disable	Normal	Disable
4	Disable	Normal	Disable
5	Disable	Normal	Disable
6	Disable	Normal	Disable
7	Disable	Normal	Disable
8	Disable	Normal	Disable

**Figure 127: GVRP Per Port Settings**

## GVRP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

To enable or disable GVRP globally on the EtherWAN switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**set gvrp enable bridge 1**

**set gvrp disable bridge 1**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# set gvrp enable bridge 1
switch_a(config)# set gvrp disable bridge 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To enable the dynamic VLAN creation feature of GVRP on the EtherWAN switch, you must use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **set gvrp dynamic-vlan-creation disable bridge 1**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# set gvrp dynamic-vlan-creation disable bridge 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To enable or disable GVRP locally on a port on the EtherWAN switch, you must use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**set port gvrp enable <port id>**  
**set port gvrp disable <port id>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# set port gvrp enable fe1
switch_a(config)# set port gvrp disable fe1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

By default, when GVRP is enabled on a port the **Applicant** runs in Normal mode, which means that the GVRP protocol will not send out any PDUs from a port if the port is being blocked by STP. When you enable the GVRP Applicant to run in Active mode on a port, the GVRP protocol will continue to send PDUs from a port even if the port is being blocked by STP.

The GVRP **Applicant** can be set to run in Normal or Active mode on a port by issuing the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**set gvrp applicant state normal <port id>**  
**set gvrp applicant state active <port id>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# set gvrp applicant state normal fe1
switch_a(config)# set gvrp applicant state active fe1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

When you enable GVRP on a port, the **Registrar** is enabled on the port by default. You can enable or disable the GVRP **Registrar** on a port by issuing the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**set gvrp registration normal <port id>**

**set gvrp registration forbidden <port id>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# set gvrp registration normal fe1
switch_a(config)# set gvrp registration forbidden fe1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# IGMP Snooping

The settings in the IGMP Snooping feature of the EtherWAN switch controls how the switch forwards multicast packets.

## General Overview

The EtherWAN Managed Switch has been outfitted with the IGMP Snooping function in three modes:

- **Disabled:**
  - The switch will forward all multicast packets according to the **Forced Forwarding Port** setting based on the following rule:
    - All multicast packets will be forwarded to only the port specified by either the **PassiveForwardMode** or the **ForcedForwardMode** function.
- **Passive mode:**
  - The switch will forward any multicast packets that have known receivers to the known multicast receiver ports only.
  - The switch will forward any unknown multicast packets (multicast packets without any known receivers) according to the **Forced Forwarding Port** setting based on the following rule:
    - When there is no Querier Port (a port that receives IGMP queries) present all unknown multicast packets will be forwarded to the port specified by either the **PassiveForwardMode** function or the **ForcedForwardMode** function.
    - When there is a Querier port present, the switch will forward all unknown multicast packets to the Querier port. In addition, all unknown multicast packets will be forwarded to the port specified by the **ForcedForwardMode** function as well.
- **Querier mode:**
  - The switch will forward any multicast packets that have known receivers to the known multicast receiver ports only.
  - The switch will forward any unknown multicast packets according to the **Forced Forwarding Port** setting based on the following rule:
    - All unknown multicast packets will be sent to only the port specified by the **ForcedForwardMode** function.
    - The switch will also transmit IGMP Queries to the specified VLAN and according to the specified IGMP Query parameters.

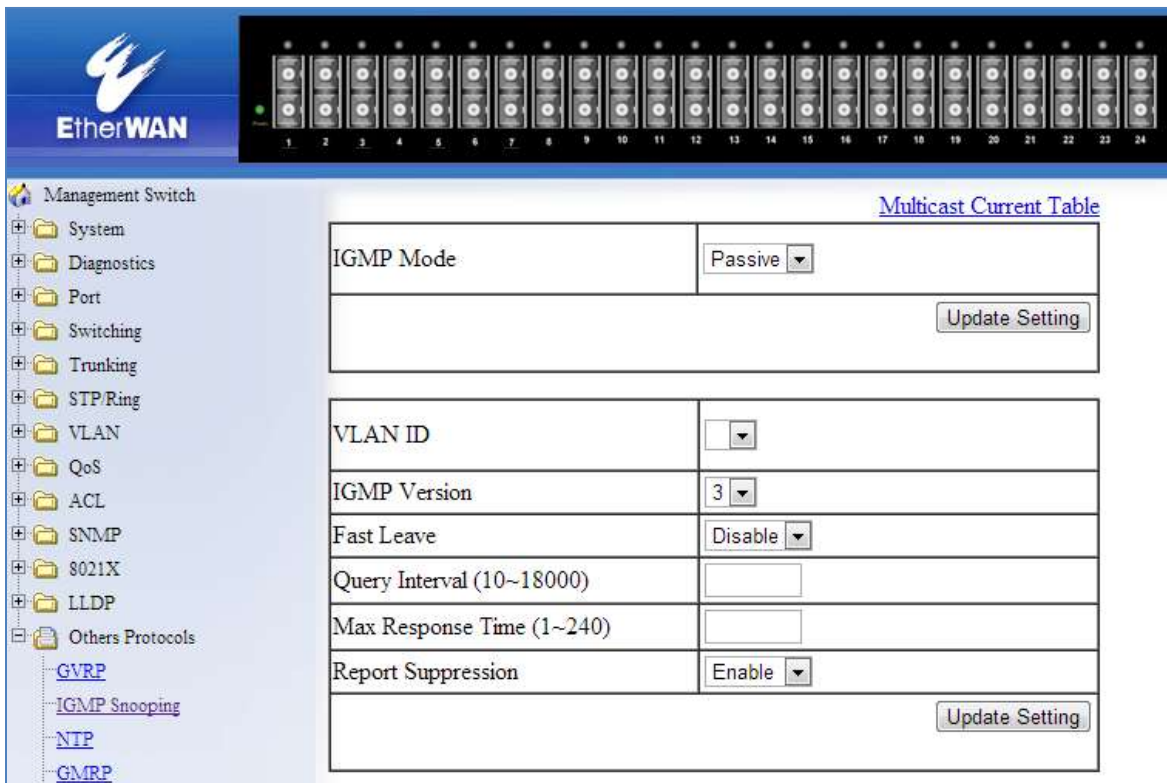
## Enabling the IGMP Snooping Modes

To navigate to the **IGMP Snooping** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **IGMP Snooping**.

To put the IGMP Snooping feature in the correct Mode, follow the steps below:

- Choose the appropriate choice from the dropdown list next to **IGMP mode**
- Click on the **Update Setting** button (See [below](#))



The screenshot displays the configuration page for IGMP Snooping on an EtherWAN Managed Switch. The interface includes a navigation tree on the left, a main configuration area, and a status bar at the top.

**Navigation Tree:**

- Management Switch
  - System
  - Diagnostics
  - Port
  - Switching
  - Trunking
  - STP/Ring
  - VLAN
  - QoS
  - ACL
  - SNMP
  - 8021X
  - LLDP
  - Others Protocols
    - GVRP
    - IGMP Snooping
    - NTP
    - GMRP

**IGMP Mode Configuration:**

IGMP Mode	Passive ▼
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

**IGMP Snooping Configuration:**

VLAN ID	▼
IGMP Version	3 ▼
Fast Leave	Disable ▼
Query Interval (10~18000)	<input type="text"/>
Max Response Time (1~240)	<input type="text"/>
Report Suppression	Enable ▼
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

**Other Elements:**

- [Multicast Current Table](#)
- Port status bar (1-24)
- EtherWAN logo

**Figure 128: IGMP Mode**

## Configuring IGMP Snooping General properties

To navigate to the **IGMP Snooping** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **IGMP Snooping**.

To configure the general features for IGMP Snooping in either the **Passive** or **Querier** mode, follow the steps below (see [Figure 129](#)):

1. From the dropdown list next to **VLAN ID**, choose the VLAN that you want the IGMP Snooping process to run on.
  2. From the dropdown list next to **IGMP Version**, choose the correct IGMP version to be run on this VLAN. This setting must match the IGMP version being used by the IGMP querier and the IGMP client on the network.
  3. Choosing the appropriate choice (Enable or Disable) from the dropdown list next to **Fast Leave**.
    - If this feature is enabled on the switch, and the switch receives a request to leave a multicast stream on a port, then the switch will drop this multicast stream on that port without checking to see if there are any other multicast clients on that port that might still be interested in receiving this multicast stream. This allows the multicast stream to disappear from a port much faster.
2. Next, click on the **Update Setting** button

IGMP Mode	Passive ▾
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

VLAN ID	1 ▾
IGMP Version	3 ▾
Fast Leave	Disable ▾
Query Interval (10~18000)	125
Max Response Time (1~240)	10
Report Suppression	Enable ▾
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

**Figure 129: IGMP General Properties**

## Configuring IGMP Passive Mode Specific properties

To navigate to the **IGMP Snooping** page:


1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **IGMP Snooping**.

To configure specific properties for IGMP Passive Mode, please follow the steps below.

IGMP Mode	Passive
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	
VLAN ID	1
IGMP Version	3
Fast Leave	Disable
Query Interval (10~18000)	125
Max Response Time (1~240)	10
Report Suppression	Enable
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

**Figure 130: IGMP Passive Mode**

1. From the dropdown list next to **VLAN ID**, choose the VLAN for which you wish to configure the Report Suppression feature.
2. Choose **Enable** or **Disable** in the dropdown list next to **Report Suppression**.  
(Note: if the switch is not in **Passive** mode, then this feature will have no effect.)

 Note: If you are using IGMP version 1 or 2, the **Query Interval**, and the **Max Response Time** setting must be configured even if you are not configuring IGMP Querier mode. For IGMP version 1 and 2, the membership registration timer (used to time out the membership status on each port) is based on these two parameters on the local switch. These two parameters should configure to match that of the current active IGMP Querier. The formula for the membership registration timer is:  $2 \times \text{query-interval} + \text{max-response-time} = \text{Timeout period}$ .

## Configuring IGMP Querier Mode Specific properties

To navigate to the **IGMP Snooping** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **IGMP Snooping**.

To configure specific properties for IGMP Querier Mode, follow the steps below (see [Figure 131](#)):

1. In the text box next to **Query Interval**, enter a value between 10 and 18000
  - This value will represent the time interval, in seconds, between any two queries that the switch scents on to the network. It is recommended that you use the default setting of 125 seconds that are according to the IGMP standard.
2. In the text box next to **Max Response Time**, enter a value between 1 and 240.
  - This value represents the maximum time in seconds that a multicast client will have to respond to an IGMP query. Any response received after this time will not be accepted by the Querier. It is recommended that you use the default setting of 10 seconds according to the IGMP standard.

Multicast Current Table	
IGMP Mode	Querier
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	
VLAN ID	1
IGMP Version	3
Fast Leave	Disable
Query Interval (10~18000)	125
Max Response Time (1~240)	10
Report Suppression	Enable
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

**Figure 131: Querier Mode Properties**

## Configuring IGMP Unknown Multicast Forwarding

To navigate to the **IGMP Snooping** page:

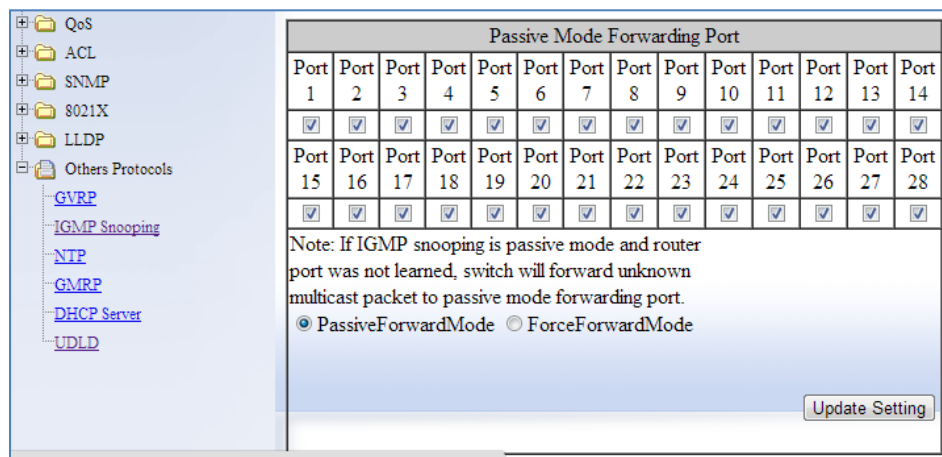
1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **IGMP Snooping**.

With IGMP enabled, the EtherWAN switch will transmit all multicast packets to their only multicast receiver ports. However, some multicast packets will not have any known multicast receiver ports either due to IGMP Snooping being disabled on the switch, or because no multicast receiver has sent IGMP requests for these multicast packets. The multicast packets in these scenarios are referred to as **unknown multicast packets**. You can use the **Passive Mode Forwarding Port** section of the IGMP Snooping configuration page to control how the switch will forward these unknown multicast packets under different IGMP Snooping modes of the switch (see [Figure 132](#)).

### Disabled Mode Forwarding Port Configuration

When IGMP is in Disabled Mode, all multicast packets are unknown multicast packets, and by default all unknown multicast packets are forwarded to all the ports of the switch. To modify the default behavior and to control how the switch will forward unknown multicast packets when the switch is in **IGMP Snooping Disabled mode**:

1. Select either the **PassiveForwardMode** or the **ForceForwardMode** radio button.
2. Make sure that only the ports that you would like to have the **unknown multicast packets** to be forwarded to, have a check mark next to it.
3. Then click on the **Update Setting** button.



**Figure 132: Disabled Mode Forwarding Port**

## Passive Mode Forwarding Port Configuration


You can control how the switch forwards unknown multicast packets under **IGMP Passive mode** in two different conditions:

- When there is no IGMP Querier port (a port that receives IGMP queries) present.
- When an IGMP Querier port is present **or** when no IGMP Querier port is present.

To configure how the switch forwards unknown multicast packets when the switch is in IGMP Passive mode, follow the steps below:

### No IGMP Querier port present

1. Under the **Passive Mode Forwarding Port** section, select the **PassiveForwardMode** radio button.
2. Select the checkbox under the ports that you would like to have the **unknown multicast packets** forwarded to.
3. Click on the “Update Setting” button.

 Note: The presence of an IGMP Querier port will make the settings provided by the **PassiveForwardMode** to have no effect, and all unknown multicast packets will be forwarded to the IGMP Querier port only.

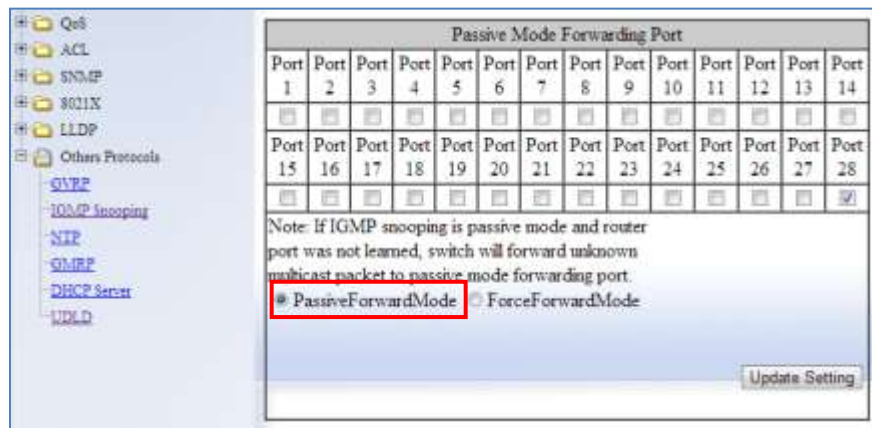

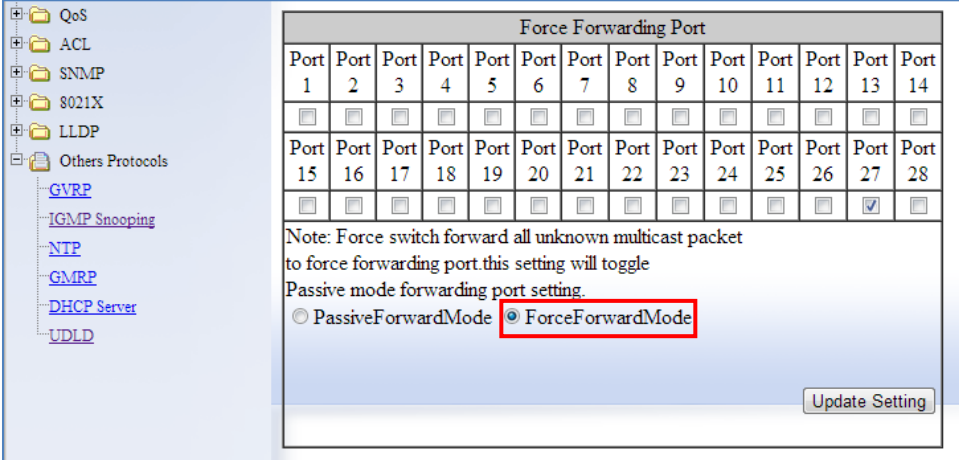


Figure 133: PassiveForwardMode

## IGMP Querier port present or no IGMP Querier port present

1. Under the **Passive Mode Forwarding Port** section, select the **ForceForwardMode** radio button
2. Select the checkbox under the ports that you would like to have the **unknown multicast packets** forwarded to.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

 Note: The settings according to the **ForceForwardMode** will always be in effect both with and without the presence of an IGMP Querier port. In addition, when an IGMP Querier port is present, all unknown multicast packets will also be forwarded to the IGMP Querier port as well, in addition to the settings in the **ForceForwardMode** function.



Force Forwarding Port													
Port 1	Port 2	Port 3	Port 4	Port 5	Port 6	Port 7	Port 8	Port 9	Port 10	Port 11	Port 12	Port 13	Port 14
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Port 15	Port 16	Port 17	Port 18	Port 19	Port 20	Port 21	Port 22	Port 23	Port 24	Port 25	Port 26	Port 27	Port 28
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Note: Force switch forward all unknown multicast packet to force forwarding port.this setting will toggle Passive mode forwarding port setting.

PassiveForwardMode  ForceForwardMode


Update Setting

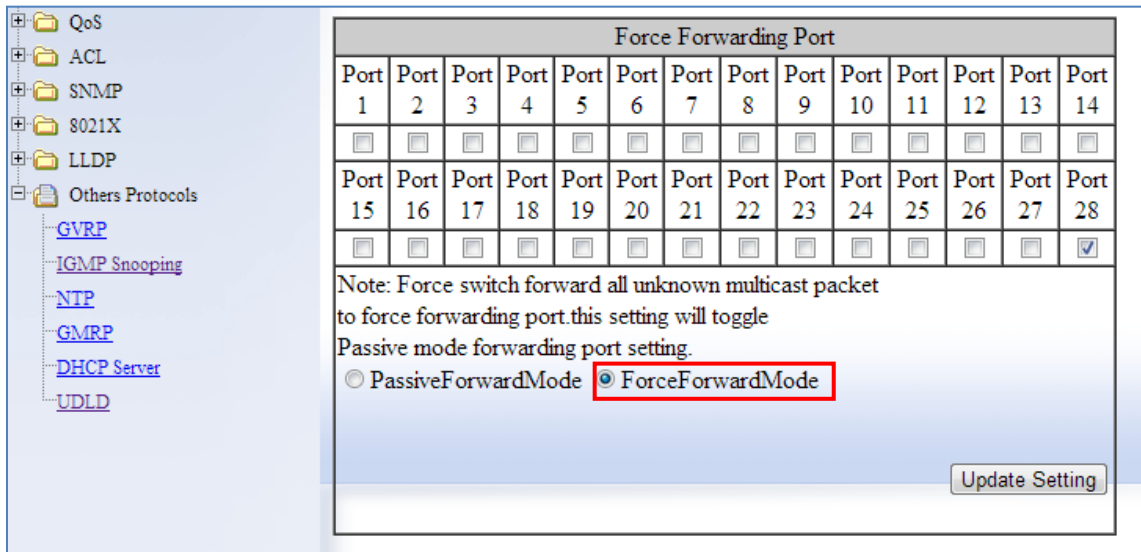
Figure 134: ForceForwardMode

## IGMP Querier Mode Forwarding Port Configuration

To configure how the switch forwards unknown multicast packets when the switch is in IGMP Querier mode, follow the below instructions:

1. Under the **Passive Mode Forwarding Port** section, select the **ForceForwardMode** radio button
2. Select the checkbox under the ports that you would like to have the **unknown multicast packets** forwarded to.
3. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

 Note: When the switch is in **IGMP Snooping Querier mode**, there will not be an IGMP Querier port present, and the settings according to the **ForceForwardMode** will always be in effect.



Force Forwarding Port														
Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port	Port
15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Note: Force switch forward all unknown multicast packet to force forwarding port.this setting will toggle Passive mode forwarding port setting.

PassiveForwardMode
  ForceForwardMode

Update Setting

Figure 135: IGMP Querier Mode Forwarding

## Monitoring Registered Multicast Groups

To navigate to the **Multicast Current Table** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **IGMP Snooping**.
3. Click on the **Multicast Current Table** link at the top of the page.

When the switch is in IGMP Passive or IGMP Querier mode, registered Multicast Groups can be monitored on each port, as well as the location of the IGMP Querier port (see [Figure 136](#)).

- All the registered multicast Groups will be listed in the **Group Address** column.
- The port where each registered Group ID was received can be found in the **Membership** column in each registered Groups corresponding row.



Note: when an IGMP Querier port is present, all registered multicast group IDs will show up in the **Membership** column as a checked box for the IGMP Querier port, even if an **IGMP Join** was never received for that Group ID on the Querier port.

[IGMP Snooping](#)

Current Multicast Groups				
VLAN ID	Group Address	Group	Membership	Router Port
1	01:00:5e:32:d9:05	Ports 1-8	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	ge4
		Ports 9-28	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
1	01:00:5e:7c:01:01	Ports 1-8	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	ge4
		Ports 9-28	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
1	01:00:5e:7fff:fa	Ports 1-8	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	ge4
		Ports 9-28	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

**Figure 136: Current Multicast Groups**

## IGMP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

To put the IGMP Snooping feature in **Disabled Mode** use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **no ip igmp snooping**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#no ip igmp snooping
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To put the IGMP Snooping feature in **Passive Mode** use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip igmp snooping enable**

**no ip igmp snooping querier**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip igmp snooping enable
switch_a(config)#no ip igmp snooping querier
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To put the IGMP Snooping feature in **Querier Mode** use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip igmp snooping enable**  
**ip igmp snooping querier**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ip igmp snooping enable
switch_a(config)#ip igmp snooping querier
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the IGMP version per VLAN, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **ip igmp version <1-3>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.1
switch_a(config-if)#ip igmp version 2
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To enable or disable the IGMP **fast-leave** feature on a VLAN, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **VLAN Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip igmp snooping fast-leave**  
**no ip igmp snooping fast-leave**

Usage Example - **Enabling** the IGMP **fast-leave** feature:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.1
switch_a(config-if)#ip igmp snooping fast-leave
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - **Disabling** the IGMP **fast-leave** feature:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.1
switch_a(config-if)#no ip igmp snooping fast-leave
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To enable or disable the IGMP **Report Suppression** feature on a VLAN, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **VLAN Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip igmp snooping report-suppression**  
**no ip igmp snooping report-suppression**

Usage Example - **Enabling** the IGMP **Report Suppression** feature:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.1
switch_a(config-if)# ip igmp snooping report-suppression
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - **Disabling** the IGMP Report Suppression feature:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.1
switch_a(config-if)#no ip igmp snooping report-suppression
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To configure the IGMP **query-interval**, and the **max-response-time** settings per VLAN, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **VLAN Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip igmp query-interval <10-18000>**

**ip igmp query-max-response-time <1-240>**

Usage Example - Configuring the IGMP **query-interval** parameter:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.1
switch_a(config-if)# ip igmp query-interval 125
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - Configuring the IGMP **max-response-time** parameter:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.1
switch_a(config-if)# ip igmp query-max-response-time 10
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To control how the switch forwards unknown multicast packets when the switch is in IGMP Disabled mode, follow the instructions below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip igmp snooping passive-forward all**

**ip igmp snooping passive-forward none**

**ip igmp snooping passive-forward <ifname>,<ifname>,<ifname>**

Usage Example - Flood all unknown multicast packets:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping passive-forward all
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - Drop all unknown multicast packets:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping passive-forward none
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - Forward unknown multicast packets to the specified ports only:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping passive-forward fe1,fe2,fe3
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To only control how the switch will forward unknown multicast packets when the switch is in IGMP Passive mode and also without a Querier Port present, follow the below instructions:

CLI Command Mode: General Configuration Mode

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip igmp snooping passive-forward all**

**ip igmp snooping passive-forward none**

**ip igmp snooping passive-forward <ifname>,<ifname>,<ifname>**

Usage Example - Flood all unknown multicast packets:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping passive-forward all
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - Drop all unknown multicast packets:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping passive-forward none
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - Forward unknown multicast packets to the specified ports only:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping passive-forward fe1,fe2,fe3
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To control how the switch will forward unknown multicast packets when the switch is in IGMP Passive mode, both with or without a Querier Port present, follow the instructions below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip igmp snooping force-forward all**

**ip igmp snooping force-forward none**

**ip igmp snooping force-forward <ifname>,<ifname>,<ifname>**

Usage Example - Flood all unknown multicast packets:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping force-forward all
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - Drop all unknown multicast packets:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping force-forward none
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - Forward unknown multicast packets to the specified ports only:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping force-forward fe1,fe2,fe3
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To control how the switch will forward unknown multicast packets when the switch is in IGMP Querier mode, follow the below instructions:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**ip igmp snooping force-forward all**

**ip igmp snooping force-forward none**

**ip igmp snooping force-forward <ifname>,<ifname>,<ifname>**

Usage Example - Flood all unknown multicast packets:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping force-forward all
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - Drop all unknown multicast packets:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping force-forward none
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

Usage Example - Forward unknown multicast packets to the specified ports only:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# ip igmp snooping force-forward fe1,fe2,fe3
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# Network Time Protocol

NTP or Network Time Protocol is a useful tool designed to update your switch with the most accurate time available from a user specified time source. This is useful for the end user in that the switch logging is noted with the actual time rather than the default switch time (begins on Jan 1st, 2010) as it can aid debugging switching related problems by showing an accurate time an event occurred.

To navigate to the **NTP** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **NTP**

## Enabling NTP

To enable the NTP client, follow the steps below (see [Figure 137](#)):

1. Choose Enable from the dropdown list next to **NTP Status**
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button

## Setting the NTP Server IP Address

To provide a time source for the NTP client, follow the steps below:

1. Enter an IP address or host name in the **NTP Server** text box.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button

## Setting the Timezone

To change the timezone of the switch, follow the steps below:

1. Select the proper timezone from the dropdown list next to **Time Zone**.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button

## Setting the Polling Period

To alter the polling period (how often the NTP client checks the server for the correct time), follow the steps below:

1. Enter the new polling period in the Polling Interval textbox.
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button

## Manually Syncing Time

To set the time immediately using an NTP server, follow the steps below:

1. Enter the new polling period in the Polling Interval textbox.
2. Click on the **Sync Time** button in the **NTP Server** field

NTP Setting	
NTP Status	Enable ▾
NTP Server (IP Address or Domain Name)	time-a.nist.gov <input type="button" value="Sync Time"/>
Time Zone	(GMT-06:00) Central Time (US & Canada) ▾
Current Time	Thu Mar 27 12:42:43 CST 2014
Polling Interval (1-10080 min)	60
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

Figure 137: NTP Settings

## Daylight Savings Time - Weekday Mode

To adjust the switch's clock for Daylight Savings Time using the weekday mode, follow the steps below:

1. Select the option **Weekday** from the **Daylight Saving Mode** dropdown box.
2. Enter the value for the time offset in the **Time Set Offset** textbox.
3. Enter the name of the **Daylight Saving Timezone**.
4. In the **Weekday Box**, select the month, week, day, hour, and minute for both the from and to fields. For example, if Daylight Saving Time begins on the second Sunday in March at 2:00AM and ends on the first Sunday in November at 2:00AM, then select the values as shown in [Figure 138](#).
5. Click on the **Update Setting** button

Daylight Saving Setting	
Daylight Saving Mode	Weekday ▾
Time Set Offset (1-480 min)	60
Name of Daylight Saving Timezone	CDT
Weekday	From Month Mar ▾ Week 2 Day Sun ▾ Hour 2 Minute 0 To Month Nov ▾ Week 1 Day Sun ▾ Hour 2 Minute 0
Date	From Month Jan ▾ Day <input type="text"/> Hour <input type="text"/> Minute <input type="text"/> To Month Jan ▾ Day <input type="text"/> Hour <input type="text"/> Minute <input type="text"/>
Update Setting	

Figure 138: Daylight Savings – Weekday Mode

### Daylight Savings Time – Date Mode

To adjust the switch's clock for Daylight Savings Time using the date mode, follow the steps below:

1. Select the option **Date** from the **Daylight Saving Mode** dropdown box.
2. Enter the value for the time offset in the **Time Set Offset** textbox.
3. Enter the name of the **Daylight Saving Timezone**.
4. In the **Date section**, select the month and enter the date, hour, and minute for both the from and to fields. For example, if Daylight Saving Time begins on March 9th at 2:00AM and ends on November 2nd at 2:00AM, then select the values as shown in [Figure 139](#).
5. Click on the **Update Setting** button

Daylight Saving Setting	
Daylight Saving Mode	Date ▾
Time Set Offset (1-480 min)	60
Name of Daylight Saving Timezone	CDT
Weekday	From Month <input type="text" value="Jan"/> ▾ Week <input type="text" value=""/> Day <input type="text" value="Sun"/> ▾ Hour <input type="text" value=""/> Minute <input type="text" value=""/> To Month <input type="text" value="Jan"/> ▾ Week <input type="text" value=""/> Day <input type="text" value="Sun"/> ▾ Hour <input type="text" value=""/> Minute <input type="text" value=""/>
Date	From Month <input type="text" value="Mar"/> ▾ Day <input type="text" value="9"/> Hour <input type="text" value="2"/> Minute <input type="text" value="0"/> To Month <input type="text" value="Nov"/> ▾ Day <input type="text" value="2"/> Hour <input type="text" value="2"/> Minute <input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="button" value="Update Setting"/>	

Figure 139: Daylight Savings – Date Mode

## Network Time Protocol Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

To enable NTP on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **ntp enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ntp enable
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the NTP server on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **ntp server <IP Address or Host Name of NTP Server>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ntp server 192.168.1.126
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the NTP polling interval on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **ntp polling-interval <time in minutes, 1-10080>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ntp polling-interval 180
```

```
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To have the NTP client sync the clock immediately on the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **ntp sync-time**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#ntp sync-time
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the current time zone for the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**clock timezone <Name of Time Zone> <UTC Offset in hh:mm format>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)#clock timezone CDT -6:00
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the Daylight Savings Time settings using weekday mode for the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**clock summer-time <Name of Time Zone> weekday <start week number> <start day> <start month> <start hour> <start minute> <end week number> <end day> <end hour> <end minute> <time offset in minutes>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# clock summer-time CDT weekday 2 Sun March 2
0 1 Sun November 2 0 60
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To set the Daylight Savings Time settings using date mode for the EtherWAN Managed Switch, use the CLI commands below:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**clock summer-time <Name of Time Zone> date <start date> <start month> <start hour> <start minute> <end date> <end month> <end hour> <end minute> <time offset in minutes>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# clock summer-time CDT date 9 March 2 0 2 November 2
0 60
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

# GMRP

The settings in the GMRP feature controls how the switch automates the process of multicast packet forwarding, both within a single switch as well as between switches in a bridged network. With the GMRP feature enabled, when the switch receives any GMRP multicast group registration requests from either a multicast client or a neighbor switch, the switch will register these multicast groups on these ports and will only transmit the multicast packets that belong to these groups to these ports. The switch will also automatically propagate these multicast group registrations onto the neighbor switches to allow the neighbor switches to forward the multicast packets that belong to these groups to the local switch.

To navigate to the **Other Protocols / GMRP** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **GMRP**.

## General Overview

The ports on the EtherWAN switch can be configured with the GMRP feature in five modes:

- Disabled
- Normal
- Fixed
- Forbidden
- Forward All.

### GMRP Normal mode

When a port is put in GMRP **Normal** mode, that port can accept both multicast group registration and multicast group deregistration from the multicast client or the neighbor switch that is residing on that port. Also, the switch will propagate all the registered multicast groups on the switch to the neighbor switch residing on that port.

### GMRP Fixed mode

When a port is put in GMRP **Fixed** mode, that port can accept group registration but will not accept any group deregistration from multicast clients or neighbor switches that reside on that port. Also, the switch will be propagating all the registered multicast groups on the switch to the neighbor switch residing on that port.

### **GMRP Forbidden mode**

When a port is put in GMRP **Forbidden** mode, all multicast groups will be deregistered on that port and that port will not be accepting any further multicast group registrations. However, the switch will still be propagating all the registered multicast groups on the switch to the neighbor switch residing on that port.

### **GMRP Forward All mode**

When a port is put in GMRP **Forward All** mode, all the registered multicast groups on the switch will automatically be registered to this port, so the switch will be forwarding all the multicast packets that belong to these groups to this port and this port will also be propagating all the registered multicast groups on the switch to the neighbor switch residing on that port.

### **GMRP Disabled mode**

When a port is put in GMRP **disabled** mode that port will not participate in any GMRP activities.

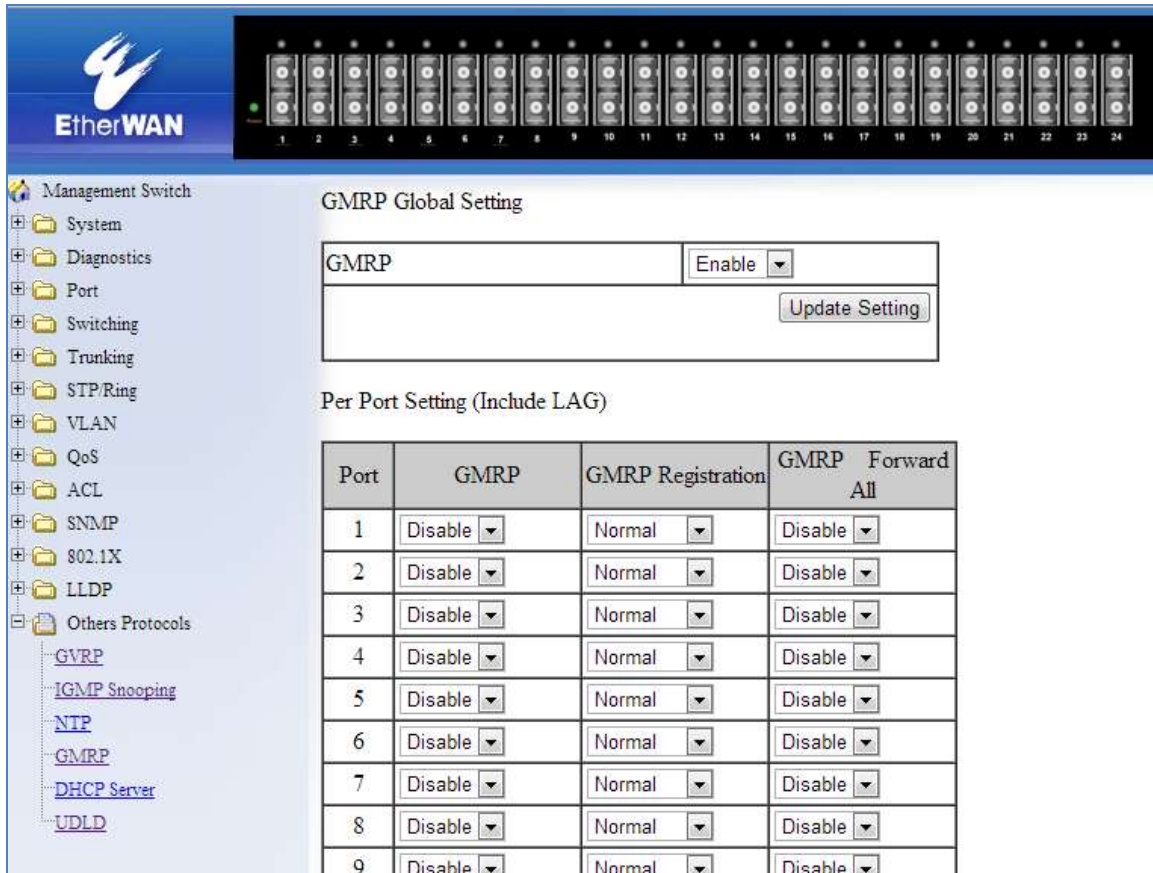
## **Enabling the GMRP Feature Globally on the Switch**

To navigate to the **Other Protocols / GMRP** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **GMRP**.

To enable the GMRP function in the switch, follow the procedure below:

1. Choose the **Enable** option from the dropdown list next to **GMRP**
2. Click on the **Update Setting** button. (See [Figure 140](#))



**Figure 140: GMRP Global Setting**

## Configuring the GMRP Feature Per Port

To navigate to the **Other Protocols / GMRP** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**.
2. Click on **GMRP**.

GMRP should be enabled on all the ports that could be a potential source of multicast traffic, and on the ports that are connected to multicast clients. You can also further configure each GMRP enabled port with the particular application modes described in the below configuration.

To allow a port to dynamically receive GMRP multicast group registrations and dynamically transmit the multicast packets that belong to these multicast groups on this port configure the items listed below:

- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Enable** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP column.

- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Normal** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP Registration column.
- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Disable** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP Forward All column.
- Click on the **Update Setting** button.

To allow a port to dynamically receive GMRP multicast group registrations and then make the multicast packets that belong to these multicast groups constantly available on this port, configure the items listed below:

- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Enable** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP column.
- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Fixed** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP Registration column.
- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Disable** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP Forward All column.
- Click on the **Update Setting** button.

If you do not wish to transmit any multicast packets on a port based on the received GMRP multicast group registrations on that port, but would like to receive multicast packets that belong to the currently registered multicast groups on the switch on that port, configure the items listed below:

- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Enable** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP column.
- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Forbidden** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP Registration column.
- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Disable** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP Forward All column.
- Click on the **Update Setting** button.

If you wish to transmit all the multicast packets that belong to all the currently registered multicast groups on the switch on a port, configure the items listed below:

- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **“Enable”** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP column.

- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the appropriate option from the drop-down list under the GMRP Registration column, according to the previous instructions.
- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Enable** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP Forward All column.
- Click on the **Update Setting** button.

If you do not want a port to participate in the GMRP protocol, configure the items listed below:

- For each port that you wish to apply this application, select the **Disable** option from the drop-down list under the GMRP column.
- Click on the **Update Setting** button.

## GMRP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

To enable or disable GMRP globally on the EtherWAN switch, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**set gmrp enable bridge 1**

**set gmrp disable bridge 1**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# set gmrp enable bridge 1
switch_a(config)# set gmrp disable bridge 1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

To enable GMRP locally on a port on the EtherWAN switch, you must use the below CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

**set port gmrp enable <port id>**

**set port gmrp disable <port id>**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable
switch_a#configure terminal
switch_a(config)# set port gmrp enable fe1
switch_a(config)# set port gmrp disable fe1
switch_a(config)#q
switch_a#
```

When you enable GMRP on a port, the **Registrar** is in **Normal** mode by default. The GMRP **Registrar** on a port can be configured in 3 different modes by issuing the following CLI commands

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

```
set gmrp registration normal <port id>  
set gmrp registration fixed fe1 <port id>  
set gmrp registration forbidden <port id>
```

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable  
switch_a#configure terminal  
switch_a(config)#set gmrp registration normal fe1  
switch_a(config)#set gmrp registration fixed fe1  
switch_a(config)#set gmrp registration forbidden fe1  
switch_a(config)#q  
switch_a#
```

By default when you enable GVRP on a port this feature is disabled. To enable or disable the **Forward All** feature on a port, use the following CLI commands:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

```
set gmrp fwdall enable <port id>  
set gmrp fwdall disable <port id>
```

Usage Example:

```
switch_a>enable  
switch_a#configure terminal  
switch_a(config)#set gmrp fwdall enable fe1  
switch_a(config)#set gmrp fwdall disable fe1  
switch_a(config)#q  
switch_a#
```

# DHCP Server

DHCP is a TCP/IP application protocol that allows any TCP/IP device to dynamically obtain its initial TCP/IP configurations through the TCP/IP protocol itself (in this case, through the UDP protocol). It is based on the client-server paradigm. The EtherWAN switch can be setup as a DHCP server to allow any DHCP client to dynamically obtain its IP address, default router, and DNS servers.

## General Overview

The EtherWAN switch can function as a DHCP server for a single VLAN (it can be any VLAN) on the switch. When functioning as a DHCP server, the EtherWAN switch can be configured with a range of IP addresses, default gateway and DNS servers, which will allow the switch to use the dynamic configuration function of the DHCP protocol to provide any TCP/IP device that is a DHCP client, to dynamically obtain an IP address, default router, and DNS servers. The EtherWAN DHCP server can also be configured with a lease period that the DHCP clients are allowed the use of their assigned IP address. In this simple implementation, both the DHCP Client and the DHCP Server must be on the same network (same VLAN).

## Configuring the DHCP Server

To navigate to the **DHCP Server** page:

1. Click on the **+** next to **Other Protocols**
2. Click on **DHCP Server** (see [Figure 141](#))

You can use the GUI to set the following DHCP server parameters:

- DHCP Server Enable
- DHCP VLAN.
- DHCP Client Parameters
  - IP Address range
  - Subnet Mask
  - Default gateway
  - Primary and Secondary DNS.
- DHCP Client lease time

To set the DHCP server parameters:

1. From the drop-down list next to **DHCP Server Status**, select the VLAN that will get the DHCP provided TCP/IP Parameters.
2. Enter the starting and ending IP addresses for the DHCP Client IP address range, in the text boxes next to **Start IP** and **End IP**.
3. Enter the Subnet Mask in the text box next to **Subnet Mask**.
4. Enter the IP address for the DHCP Client default router in the text entry box next to **Gateway**.
5. Enter the IP addresses for the DHCP Client primary and secondary DNS servers, in the text entry box next to **Primary DNS** and **Secondary DNS**.
6. Enter the lease period in seconds, which the DHCP clients are allowed the use of their leased IP addresses, in the text entry box next to **Lease Time**.
7. Click on the **Update Setting** button.

DHCP Server General Setting	
DHCP Server Status	1 VLAN0100
Start IP	2 192.168.7.100
End IP	3 192.168.7.107
Subnet Mask	4 255.255.255.0
Gateway	5 192.168.7.1
Primary DNS	6 1.2.3.4
Secondary DNS	7 5.6.7.8
Lease Time	86400 (0 to 864000,86400:default)
7 Update Setting	

Figure 141: DHCP Server

To check what IP addresses has been allocated to which DHCP clients:

1. Click on the **DHCP Binding Table** link (see [Figure 142](#))
2. Click on the DHCP General Setting link to get back to the previous DHCP configuration Web GUI page (see [Figure 143](#)).

**Figure 142: DHCP Bindings**

Mac Address	IP-Address	Expires In
a4:ba:db:de:d6:2f	192.168.7.100	23 hours, 58 minutes, 0 seconds

**Figure 143: DHCP Binding Table**

## DHCP Configuration Examples Using CLI Commands

For more information on CLI command usage see [CLI Command Usage](#).

To set the DHCP server parameters:

CLI Command Mode: **General Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax:

```
dhcp-server range <start IP> <end IP>  
dhcp-server subnet-mask <subnet mask in dotted decimal notation>  
dhcp-server gateway <IP address>  
dhcp-server dns 1 <IP address>  
dhcp-server dns 2 <IP address>  
dhcp-server lease-time <0-864000>
```

Usage Example:

```
switch_a> enable  
switch_a#configure terminal  
switch_a(config)#dhcp-server range 192.168.7.100 192.168.7.107  
switch_a(config)#dhcp-server subnet-mask 255.255.255.0  
switch_a(config)#dhcp-server gateway 192.168.7.1  
switch_a(config)#dhcp-server dns 1 1.2.3.4  
switch_a(config)#dhcp-server dns 2 5.6.7.8  
switch_a(config)#dhcp-server lease-time 86400  
switch_a(config)#q  
switch_a#
```

To enable the DHCP server and set the DHCP VLAN:

CLI Command Mode: **Interface Configuration Mode**

CLI Command Syntax: **dhcp-server enable; no dhcp-server enable**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a> enable  
switch_a#configure terminal  
switch_a(config)#interface vlan1.100  
switch_a(config-if)#dhcp-server enable  
switch_a(config-if)#no dhcp-server enable  
switch_a(config-if)#q  
switch_a(config)#q  
switch_a#
```

To check what IP addresses has been allocated:

CLI Command Mode: **enable**

CLI Command Syntax: **show dhcp-server binding**

Usage Example:

```
switch_a> enable
```

```
switch_a#show dhcp-server binding
```

<b>Mac Address</b>	<b>IP-Address</b>	<b>Expires in</b>
<b>a4:ba:db:de:d6:2f</b>	<b>192.168.7.100</b>	<b>23 hours, 57 minutes, 15 seconds</b>

```
switch_a#
```

---

EtherWAN Corporation  
4570 E. Eisenhower Circle  
Anaheim, CA 92807  
Phone: 714.779.3800  
[www.EtherWAN.com](http://www.EtherWAN.com)

EtherWAN has made a good faith effort to ensure the accuracy of the information in this document and disclaims the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose and makes no express warranties, except as may be stated in its written agreement with and for its customers.

EtherWAN shall not be held liable to anyone for any indirect, special or consequential damages due to omissions or errors. The information and specifications in this document are subject to change without notice.

Copyright © 2015. All Rights Reserved.

All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

EtherWAN EtherWAN Managed Switch User Manual

August 21, 2015